



1
2
3
4
5
6
7

Annals of the ICRP

8

9

ICRP PUBLICATION XXX

10

11

12

Occupational Intakes of Radionuclides Part 1

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57

Occupational Intakes of Radionuclides

Part 1

ICRP Publication XXX

Approved by the Commission in XXX

Abstract- This report is the first in a series of documents replacing the Publication 30 series and Publication 68 to provide revised dose coefficients for occupational intakes of radionuclides (OIR) by inhalation and ingestion. The revised dose coefficients have been calculated using the Publication 100 Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM) and a revision of the Publication 66 Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM) which takes account of more recent data. In addition, information has been provided on absorption to blood following inhalation and ingestion of different chemical forms of elements and their radioisotopes, in those cases for which it is judged that the data are sufficient to make specific recommendations. Revisions have been made to many models for the systemic biokinetics of radionuclides absorbed to blood, making them more physiologically realistic representations of uptake and retention in organs and tissues and of excretion.

The reports in this series provide data for the interpretation of bioassay measurements as well as giving dose coefficients, replacing Publications 54 and 78. In assessing bioassay data such as measurements of whole-body or organ content or urinary excretion, assumptions have to be made about the exposure scenario, including the pattern and mode of radionuclide intake, physical and chemical characteristics of the material involved and the elapsed time between the exposure(s) and measurement. This report provides some guidance on monitoring programmes and data interpretation.

Keywords: Occupational exposure, Internal Dose Assessment, Biokinetic and Dosimetric models, Bioassays interpretation.

	CONTENTS	
58		
59	PREFACE	5
60	GLOSSARY	8
61	1 INTRODUCTION	25
62	1.1 Purpose of this report series	25
63	1.2 Protection quantities and dose coefficients in this report series	26
64	1.3 Previous reports on occupational intakes of radionuclides	28
65	1.4 Changes in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) that affect the calculation of	
66	equivalent and effective dose	29
67	1.5 Biokinetic models implemented in this report	31
68	1.6 Dosimetry implemented in this report	34
69	1.7 Interpretation of bioassay data	36
70	1.8 Structure of the Report	37
71	2 CONTROL OF OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES TO RADIONUCLIDES	
72		39
73	2.1 Limits, Constraints, Reference Levels and Investigation Levels	39
74	2.2 Control of Worker Doses	40
75	2.3 Objectives of Monitoring	41
76	2.4 Categories of Individual Monitoring Programme	42
77	2.5 Needs for Individual Monitoring	43
78	2.6 Female Workers: pregnancy and breast-feeding	44
79	3 BIOKINETIC AND DOSIMETRIC MODELS	46
80	3.1 Introduction	46
81	3.2 Revised Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM)	48
82	3.3 Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM)	78
83	3.4 Intact Skin and Wounds	84
84	3.5 Biokinetic Models for Systemic Radionuclides	87
85	3.6 Medical Intervention	97
86	3.7 Methodology for dose calculations	97
87	4 METHODS OF INDIVIDUAL AND WORKPLACE MONITORING	103
88	4.1 Introduction	103
89	4.2 Body Activity Measurements (<i>In Vivo</i> Measurements)	103
90	4.3 Analysis of Excreta and Other Biological Materials	104
91	4.4 Exposure Monitoring of the Workplace	105
92	5 MONITORING PROGRAMMES	107
93	5.1 Introduction	107
94	5.2 General Principles for the Design of Individual Monitoring Programmes	107
95	5.3 Categories of Monitoring Programmes	108
96	5.4 Derived Investigation Levels	111
97	5.5 Record Keeping and Reporting	112
98	5.6 Quality Management System	112
99	6 GENERAL ASPECTS OF RETROSPECTIVE DOSE ASSESSMENT	114
100	6.1 Introduction	114



101	6.2	Types of Analysis	116
102	6.3	Understanding Exposure Situations	117
103	6.4	Measurements	121
104	6.5	Uncertainties in Internal Dose Assessment Based on Bioassay	124
105	7	DATA PROVIDED FOR ELEMENTS AND RADIOISOTOPES	136
106	7.1	Introduction	136
107	7.2	Dose coefficients	137
108	7.3	Interpretation of Individual Monitoring Data	137
109	7.4	Quality Assurance	139
110		REFERENCES	140
111			

112

PREFACE

113 The system of protection recommended by the International Commission on
114 Radiological Protection is the basis for standards and working practices throughout
115 the world (ICRP, 1991, 2007; IAEA 1996a). Fundamental to the application of ICRP
116 recommendations are the protection quantities defined by ICRP, equivalent dose and
117 effective dose. While the definition of these quantities remains unchanged in the most
118 recent recommendations (ICRP, 2007), there have been important changes that affect
119 the values calculated per unit radiation exposure. Committee 2 of ICRP is responsible
120 for the provision of these reference dose coefficients for the assessment of internal
121 and external radiation exposure, calculated using reference biokinetic and dosimetric
122 models, and reference data for workers and members of the public. Following from
123 the 2007 Recommendations, Committee 2 and its Task Groups are engaged in a
124 substantial programme of work to provide new dose coefficients for various
125 circumstances of radiation exposure.

126 The 2007 Recommendations (Publication 103, ICRP, 2007) introduced changes to the
127 radiation weighting factors used in the calculation of equivalent dose to organs and
128 tissues and also changes to the tissue weighting factors used in the calculation of
129 effective dose. In addition, an important development was the adoption of reference
130 anatomical computational phantoms (that is, models of the human body based on
131 medical imaging data), in place of the composite mathematical models that have been
132 used for all previous calculations of organ doses. This process has commenced with
133 the adoption of reference male and female adult models (ICRP, 2009) and will be
134 continued with the adoption of paediatric phantoms. Publication 103 also clarified the
135 need for separate calculation of equivalent dose to males and females and sex-
136 averaging in the calculation of effective dose (ICRP, 2007). In the revision of dose
137 coefficients, the opportunity has also been taken to improve calculations by updating
138 radionuclide decay data (ICRP, 2008) and implementing more sophisticated
139 treatments of radiation transport (ICRP, 2010) using the ICRP reference anatomical
140 phantoms of the human body (ICRP, 2009). These improvements impact on dose
141 calculations for external exposures as well as for internal emitters.

142 This report is the first in a series of documents replacing the Publication 30 series
143 (ICRP, 1979, 1980, 1981, 1988b) and Publication 68 (ICRP, 1994b) to provide
144 revised dose coefficients for occupational intakes of radionuclides (OIR) by inhalation
145 and ingestion. The revised dose coefficients have been calculated using the
146 Publication 100 (ICRP, 2006) Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM) and a
147 revision of the Publication 66 (ICRP, 1994a) Human Respiratory Tract Model
148 (HRTM) which takes account of more recent data. In addition, information has been
149 provided on absorption to blood following inhalation and ingestion of different
150 chemical forms of elements and their radioisotopes, in those cases for which it is
151 judged that the data are sufficient to make specific recommendations. Revisions have
152 been made to many models for the systemic biokinetics of radionuclides absorbed to
153 blood, making them more physiologically realistic representations of uptake and
154 retention in organs and tissues and of excretion.

155 The reports in this series provide data for the interpretation of bioassay measurements
156 as well as giving dose coefficients, replacing Publications 54 and 78 (ICRP, 1988a,

157 1997b). In assessing bioassay data such as measurements of whole-body or organ
158 content or urinary excretion, assumptions have to be made about the exposure
159 scenario, including the pattern and mode of radionuclide intake, physical and
160 chemical characteristics of the material involved and the elapsed time between the
161 exposure(s) and measurement. This report provides some guidance on monitoring
162 programmes and data interpretation.

163 This first report in the series provides an introduction to the report series and includes
164 chapters on control of occupational exposures, biokinetic and dosimetric models,
165 monitoring methods, monitoring programmes and retrospective dose assessment.
166 Subsequent reports provide data on individual elements and their radioisotopes,
167 including biokinetic data and models, dose coefficients and data for bioassay
168 interpretation. CD-ROMs accompanying this series give extensive additional
169 information.

170 The membership of the Task Group on Internal Dosimetry (INDOS) at the time of the
171 completion of this report was:

172

173 *Members:*

174	F Paquet (Chair)	G Etherington	J L Lipsztein
175	E Ansoborlo	A Giussani	D Melo
176	M R Bailey	R A Guilmette	
177	E J A Blanchardon	J D Harrison	
178	H Doerfel	R W Leggett	

179

180 *Corresponding Members:*

181	A Bouville	A Luciani	D Whillans
182	C-M Castellani	D Newton	
183	R Cruz-Suarez	D Nosske	
184	C Hurtgen	D M Taylor	

185

186 The membership of the Task Group on Dose Calculations (DOCAL) at the time of the
187 completion of this report was:

188

189 *Members:*

190	W E Bolch (Chair)	A Endo	N Ishigure
191	M Zankl	V Berkovski	T P Fell
192	D Nosske	L Bertelli	N E Hertel
193	N Petoussi-Henss	K F Eckerman	J G S Hunt
194	M Pelliccioni		

195

196 *Corresponding Members:*

197	A Birchall	H Schlattl
198	G Gualdrini	M Stabin
199	D Jokisch	R Tanner
200	C Lee	X G Xu

201

202 The membership of Committee 2 was:

203

204 (2009-2013)

205 H-G Menzel (Chair)

W E Bolch

J D Harrison

206 F Paquet

M R Bailey

R Cox

207 N Ishigure

N Petoussi-Henss

M Balonov

208 G Dietze

R Leggett

A S Pradhan

209 D Bartlett

K F Eckerman

J L Lipsztein

210 V Berkovski

A Endo

J Ma

211

212

213

GLOSSARY

214 For convenience, this glossary has been structured under the subheadings of terms for:
 215 General Dosimetry and Radiological Protection, the Biokinetic Models and Bioassay
 216 Interpretation.

217

218

219 **Terms for General Dosimetry and Radiological Protection**

220 Absorbed dose, D

221 The absorbed dose is given by

222
$$D = \frac{d\bar{\varepsilon}}{dm}$$

223 where $d\bar{\varepsilon}$ is the mean energy imparted by ionising radiation to matter of mass
 224 dm . The unit of absorbed dose is joule per kilogram (J kg^{-1}), and its special
 225 name is gray (Gy).

226 Absorbed Fraction, $\phi(r_T \leftarrow r_S, E_{R,i})$

227 Fraction of radiation energy E_i emitted within the source region r_S that is
 228 absorbed in the target tissue r_T .

229 Active (bone) marrow

230 Active marrow is haematopoietically active and gets its red colour from the
 231 large numbers of erythrocytes (red blood cells) being produced. Active bone
 232 marrow serves as a target tissue for radiogenic risk of leukaemia.

233 Annual Limit on Intake (ALI)

234 The ALI was defined in Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991, para S30) as an intake (in
 235 Bq) of a radionuclide in a year which would lead to a committed effective
 236 dose of 20 mSv. ALIs are calculated separately for each intake pathway. The
 237 annual limit on intake for workers is thus:

238
$$ALI_j = \frac{0.02}{e_j(50)}$$

239 where j denotes the intake pathway (either inhalation or ingestion).

240 Becquerel (Bq)

241 The special name for the SI unit of activity, $1 \text{ Bq} = 1 \text{ s}^{-1}$.

242 Biological half-time

243 The time required for a biological system to eliminate, by natural processes
 244 not including radioactive decay, and in the absence of additional input, half
 245 the amount of a substance, (*e.g.* radioactive material) that has entered it.

246 Bone marrow. See also ‘Active (bone) marrow’; ‘Inactive (bone) marrow’.

247 Bone marrow is a soft, highly cellular tissue that occupies the cylindrical
 248 cavities of long bones and the cavities defined by the bone trabeculae of the
 249 axial and appendicular skeleton. Total bone marrow consists of a sponge-like,
 250 reticular, connective tissue framework called stroma, myeloid (blood-cell-
 251 forming) tissue, fat cells (adipocytes), small accumulations of lymphatic
 252 tissue, and numerous blood vessels and sinusoids. There are two types of bone
 253 marrow, red (active) and yellow (inactive).

254

255 Committed Effective Dose ($E(50)$). See also ‘Effective Dose’.

256 In this report series: effective dose calculated with the use of committed
 257 equivalent doses.

258
$$E(50) = \sum_T w_T \cdot \left[\frac{H(r_T, 50)^{Male} + H(r_T, 50)^{Female}}{2} \right]$$

259

260 Committed Equivalent Dose ($H(r_T, 50)$). See also ‘Equivalent Dose’.

261 In this report series: Equivalent dose calculated using a 50-year commitment
 262 period. It is the time integral of the equivalent dose rate in a tissue or organ r_T
 263 of the Reference Adult Male or the Reference Adult Female that is predicted
 264 by the reference biokinetic and dosimetric models following intake of
 265 radioactive material into the body of the Reference Worker. The integration
 266 period is 50 years following the intake.

267
$$H(r_T, 50) = \int_0^{50} \dot{H}(r_T, t) dt$$

268 For both sexes the equivalent dose rate $\dot{H}(r_T, t)$ in target tissue r_T at time t
 269 after an acute intake is expressed as

270

271
$$\dot{H}(r_T, t) = \sum_{r_S} A(r_S, t) \cdot S_w(r_T \leftarrow r_S)$$

272 where:

273 $A(r_S, t)$ is the activity of the radionuclide in source region r_S at time t
 274 after intake, Bq, predicted by the reference biokinetic models for Reference
 275 Worker,

276 $S_w(r_S \leftarrow r_T)$ is the radiation-weighted S value (Bolch *et al*, 2009); *i.e.* the
 277 equivalent dose in target tissue r_T per nuclear transformation in source region
 278 r_S , Sv (Bq s)⁻¹, for the Reference Adult Male and Reference Adult Female.

279 Derived Air Concentration (DAC)

280 The *DAC* is the activity concentration in air in Bq/m³ of the radionuclide
 281 considered which would lead to an intake of an *ALI* assuming a breathing rate

282 of the Reference Worker of $1.2 \text{ m}^3 \text{ h}^{-1}$ and an annual working time of 2000 h.
 283 Then the *DAC* is given by:

284
$$DAC_j = \frac{ALI_j}{2400}$$

285 Dose Coefficient

286 Committed tissue equivalent dose per unit intake at age t_0 , $h_T(\tau)$, or committed
 287 effective dose per unit intake, $e(\tau_D)$, where τ_D is the dose-commitment period
 288 in years over which the dose is calculated *i.e.* 50 y for adults and $(70-t_0)$ y for
 289 children. Note that elsewhere the term ‘dose per unit intake (DPUI)’ is
 290 sometimes used for dose coefficient.

291 Dose constraint

292 A prospective and source-related restriction on the individual dose from a
 293 source, which provides a basic level of protection for the most highly exposed
 294 individuals from a source, and serves as an upper bound on the dose in
 295 optimisation of protection for that source. For occupational exposures, the
 296 dose constraint is a value of individual dose used to limit the range of options
 297 considered in the process of optimisation (ICRP, 2007).

298 Dose limit

299 Recommended value of the effective dose or the organ- or tissue-equivalent
 300 dose to an individual that shall not be exceeded in planned exposure situations
 301 (ICRP, 2007).

302 Dose of record

303 In this document the dose of record refers to the effective dose, assessed by
 304 summing the measured personal dose equivalent $H_p(10)$ and the committed
 305 effective dose retrospectively determined for the Reference Worker using
 306 results of individual monitoring of the worker and ICRP reference biokinetic
 307 and dosimetric computational models. Dose of record may be assessed using
 308 site-specific parameters of exposure such as the absorption Type of the
 309 material and the AMAD/AMTD of the inhaled aerosol, but the parameters of
 310 the Reference Worker shall be fixed as defined by the ICRP in this report
 311 series. Dose of record is assigned to the worker and required to be kept for
 312 purposes of reporting and retrospective demonstration of compliance with
 313 regulatory requirements.

314 Dose Per Unit Content (DPUC)

315 In this report series: A set of tabulated values $z(t)=e(50)/m(t)$
 316 $zh_T(t)=h_T(50)/m(t)$, where $e(50)$ is DPUI and $z(t)$ is the bioassay function.
 317 DPUC represent the committed effective dose or committed equivalent dose
 318 in an organ T per unit predicted activity content in the body, a given organ
 319 (organ T or other organ) or per unit daily excretion.

320 Dose Per Unit Intake (DPUI). See also Dose Coefficient

321 In this report series: The committed effective dose per unit radionuclide
 322 intake, $e(50)$, or committed tissue equivalent dose to the tissue or organ r_T per
 323 unit radionuclide intake, $h_T(r_T, 50)$, where the dose-commitment period over
 324 which the dose is calculated is 50 years.

325 Dose–response function (DRF)

326 A particular function used in this publication to represent the absorbed dose in
 327 a target region per particle fluence in that region, derived using models of the
 328 microscopic structure of the target region geometry and the transport of the
 329 secondary ionising radiations in those regions.

330 Effective Dose, E

331 In this report series, in accordance with the generic definition of effective dose
 332 in ICRP Publication 103 (ICRP, 2006), the effective dose is calculated as:

333
$$E = \sum_T w_T \left[\frac{H(r_T)^{Male} + H(r_T)^{Female}}{2} \right]$$

334 where $H(r_T)^{Male}$ and $H(r_T)^{Female}$ are the equivalent doses to the tissue or organs
 335 r_T of the Reference Adult Male and Reference Adult Female respectively, and
 336 w_T is the tissue weighting factor for tissue r_T , with $\sum_T w_T = 1$. The sum is

337 performed over all organs and tissues of the human body considered to be
 338 sensitive to the induction of stochastic effects. Since w_R and w_T are
 339 dimensionless, the unit for the effective dose is the same as for absorbed dose,
 340 $J kg^{-1}$, and its special name is sievert (Sv).

341 Equivalent Dose ($H(r_T)$)

342 In this report series: The equivalent dose is defined as:

343
$$H(r_T) = \sum_R w_R D_R(r_T)$$

344 where w_R is the radiation weighting factor for radiation type R , and $D_R(r_T)$ is
 345 the organ dose from radiation type R to in a tissue or organ r_T of the Reference
 346 Adult Male or Reference Adult Female.. Since w_R is dimensionless, the unit
 347 for the equivalent dose is the same as for absorbed dose, $J kg^{-1}$, and its special
 348 name is sievert (Sv).

349 Exposure

350 The state or condition of being subject to irradiation.

- 351 • External Exposure: exposure to radiation from a source outside the body.
- 352 • Internal Exposure: exposure to radiation from a source within the body.

353 Gray (Gy)

354 The special name for the SI unit of absorbed dose: $1 Gy = 1 J kg^{-1}$.

- 355 Inactive (bone) marrow
356 In contrast to the active marrow, the inactive marrow is haematopoietically
357 inactive (i.e. does not directly support haematopoiesis). It gets its yellow
358 colour from fat cells (adipocytes) which occupy most of the space of the
359 yellow bone marrow framework.
- 360 Marrow cellularity
361 The fraction of bone marrow volume in a given bone that is
362 haematopoietically active. Age- and bone-site-dependent reference values for
363 marrow cellularity are given in Table 41 of ICRP Publication 70 (ICRP,
364 1995). As a first approximation, marrow cellularity may be thought of as 1
365 minus the fat fraction of bone marrow.
- 366 Mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue , D_T
367 The mean absorbed dose in a specified organ or tissue T is given by
368 $D_T = 1/m_T \int D dm$, where m_T is the mass of the organ or tissue, and D is the
369 absorbed dose in the mass element dm . The unit of mean absorbed dose is
370 joule per kilogram ($J kg^{-1}$), and its special name is gray (Gy).
- 371 Occupational exposure
372 The radiation exposure of workers incurred as a result of their work. The
373 ICRP limits its use of ‘occupational exposures’ to radiation exposures
374 incurred at work as a result of situations that can reasonably be regarded as
375 being the responsibility of the operating management.
- 376 Organ absorbed dose. See ‘Mean absorbed dose’
377 Short phrase for “mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue”.
- 378 Organ equivalent dose. See ‘Equivalent Dose’.
379 Short phrase for “equivalent dose in an organ or tissue”.
- 380 Protection Quantities
381 Values that ICRP has developed for radiological protection that allow
382 quantification of the extent of exposure to ionising radiation from both whole
383 and partial body external irradiation and from intakes of radionuclides.
- 384 Radiation weighting factor, w_R
385 A dimensionless factor by which the organ or tissue absorbed dose is
386 multiplied to reflect the relative biological effectiveness of high-LET
387 radiations compared to photon radiations. It is used to derive the equivalent
388 dose from the mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue.
- 389 Red (bone) marrow
390 See ‘Active (bone) marrow’.
- 391 Response function
392 See ‘Dose–response function’.
- 393

394 Reference level

395 In emergency or existing controllable exposure situations, this represents the
396 level of dose or risk, above which it is judged to be inappropriate to plan to
397 allow exposures to occur, and below which optimisation of protection should
398 be implemented. The chosen value for a reference level will depend upon the
399 prevailing circumstances of the exposure under consideration.

400 Reference male and reference female (reference individual)

401 An idealised male or female with characteristics defined by the ICRP for the
402 purpose of radiological protection, and with the anatomical and physiological
403 characteristics defined in ICRP Publication 89 (ICRP, 2002).

404 Reference person

405 An idealised person, for whom the equivalent doses in organs and tissues are
406 calculated by averaging the corresponding doses of the Reference Male and
407 Reference Female. The equivalent doses of the Reference person are used for
408 the calculation of the effective dose.

409 Reference phantom

410 The computational phantom of the human body (male or female voxel
411 phantom based on medical imaging data, defined in ICRP Publication 110
412 (ICRP, 2009) with the anatomical and physiological characteristics defined in
413 ICRP Publication 89 (ICRP, 2002).

414 Reference Worker

415 An adult Reference Person associated with the reference biokinetic,
416 anatomical and physiological characteristics assigned in this report series. The
417 definition of the Reference Worker includes the structure and parameter values
418 of the reference systemic biokinetic models, HATM, HATM, and dosimetric
419 models and is invariant on sex, age and other individual-specific
420 characteristics. The average breathing rate of the Reference Worker is 1.2 m^3
421 h^{-1} during the 8 h working day, which corresponds to the daily intake of 9.6 m^3
422 (Publication 66, ICRP, 1994a).

423 Reference value

424 The value of a parameter, factor or quantity that is regarded as valid for use in
425 dosimetric calculations and recommended by ICRP. To prevent accumulation
426 of error in successive calculations, the reference values are sometimes
427 expressed with higher precision than data would support..

428 Sievert (Sv)

429 The special name for the SI unit (J kg^{-1}) of equivalent dose and effective dose.

430 Source Region (r_s)

431 Region of the body containing the radionuclide. The region may be an organ, a
 432 tissue, the contents of the alimentary tract or urinary bladder, or the surfaces of
 433 tissues as in the skeleton and the respiratory tract.

434 Spongiosa

435 Term referring to the combined tissues of the bone trabeculae and marrow
 436 tissues (both active and inactive) located within cortical bone cortices across
 437 regions of the axial and appendicular skeleton. Spongiosa is one of three bone
 438 regions defined in the ICRP Publication 110 (ICRP, 2009) reference
 439 phantoms, the other two being cortical bone and medullary marrow of the long
 440 bone shafts. As the relative proportions of trabecular bone, active marrow, and
 441 inactive marrow vary with skeletal site, the homogeneous elemental
 442 composition and mass density of spongiosa is not constant but varies with
 443 skeletal site [see Annex B of ICRP Publication 110 (ICRP, 2009)].

444 S-value (radiation-weighted) $S_w(r_T \leftarrow r_S)$

445 The equivalent dose in target tissue or organ r_T per nuclear transformation of a
 446 given radionuclide in source region r_S , Sv (Bq s)⁻¹, for the Reference Adult
 447 Male and Reference Adult Female.

448
$$S_w(r_T \leftarrow r_S) = \sum_R w_R \sum_i \frac{E_{R,i} \cdot Y_{R,i} \cdot \phi(r_T \leftarrow r_S, E_{R,i})}{M(r_T)}$$

449

450 where:

- 451 $E_{R,i}$ is the energy of the i^{th} radiation of type R with the unit joule (J),
- 452 $Y_{R,i}$ is the yield of i^{th} radiation of type R per nuclear transformation,
 453 (Bq s)⁻¹,
- 454 w_R is the radiation weighting factor for radiation type R, Table 1,
- 455 $\phi(r_T \leftarrow r_S, E_{R,i})$ is the absorbed fraction,
- 456 $M(r_T)$ is the mass of target tissue r_T , kg.

457

458 Target Tissue (r_T)

459 Tissue or organ of the body in which a radiation dose is received.

460

461 Tissue weighting factor, w_T . See also ‘Effective Dose’.

462 The factor by which the equivalent dose in an organ or tissue T is weighted to
 463 represent the relative contribution of that organ or tissue to overall radiation
 464 detriment from stochastic effects (ICRP, 1991). It is defined such that

465
$$\sum_T w_T = 1$$

466 Worker

467 In this text any person who works, whether full time, part time or temporarily,
468 for an employer and who has recognised rights and duties in relation to
469 occupational radiation protection (ICRP, 2007).

470

471

472 **Terms for the biokinetic models**

473 Absorption

474 Transfer of material to body fluids regardless of mechanism. Generally applies
475 to dissociation of particles and the uptake into body fluids of soluble
476 substances and material dissociated from particles.

477 Aerodynamic diameter (d_{ae})

478 Diameter (μm) of a unit density (1 g cm^{-3}) sphere that has same terminal
479 settling velocity in air as the particle of interest.

480 Alimentary tract

481 The tube from mouth to anus in which food is digested.

482 Alimentary tract transfer factor (f_A)

483 The fraction of activity entering the alimentary tract that is absorbed to blood,
484 taking no account of losses due to radioactive decay or endogenous input of
485 activity into the tract.

486 Alveolar-Interstitial Region (AI)

487 Part of the respiratory tract, consisting of the respiratory bronchioles, alveolar
488 ducts and sacs with their alveoli, and the interstitial connective tissue; airway
489 generations 16 and beyond.

490 AMAD

491 Activity Median Aerodynamic Diameter. Fifty percent of the activity in the
492 aerosol is associated with particles of aerodynamic diameter (d_{ae}) greater than
493 the AMAD. Used when deposition depends principally on inertial impaction
494 and sedimentation, typically when the AMAD is greater than about $0.5 \mu\text{m}$.

495 AMTD

496 Activity Median Thermodynamic Diameter. Fifty percent of the activity in the
497 aerosol is associated with particles of thermodynamic diameter (d_{th}) greater
498 than the AMTD. Used when deposition depends principally on diffusion,
499 typically when the AMAD is less than about $0.5 \mu\text{m}$.

500 Basal cells

501 Cuboidal epithelial cells attached to the basement membrane of extrathoracic
502 and bronchial epithelium and not extending to the surface.

- 503 Biokinetic model
504 A mathematical model adopted in this report for the Reference Worker.
505 Reference biokinetic model describes the intake, uptake and retention of a
506 radionuclide in various organs or tissues of the body and the subsequent
507 excretion from the body by various pathways.
- 508 Bronchial Region (BB)
509 Part of the respiratory tract, consisting of the trachea (generation 0) and
510 bronchi, airway generations 1 through 8.
- 511 Bronchiolar Region (bb)
512 Part of the respiratory tract, consisting of the bronchioles and terminal
513 bronchioles; airway generations 9 through 15.
- 514 Bone surfaces
515 See 'Endosteum'.
- 516 Class SR-0
517 Insoluble and nonreactive. Negligible deposition in the respiratory tract.
- 518 Class SR-1
519 Soluble or reactive. Deposition throughout the respiratory tract, which may be
520 complete or incomplete.
- 521 Class SR-2
522 Highly soluble or reactive. Complete deposition in the respiratory tract with
523 instantaneous uptake to body fluids.
- 524 Clearance
525 The removal of material from the respiratory tract by particle transport and by
526 absorption into body fluids.
- 527 Compartment
528 In this report series: Mathematical pool of radioactive materials in the body
529 which can be characterised by first order kinetics; a compartment can be
530 associated with an organ (as for example the liver), a part of an organ (as for
531 example the bronchial region of the lungs), a tissue (as for example the bone),
532 a part of a tissue (as for example the bone surface) or another substance of the
533 body (as for example the body fluids). Activity is considered to be uniformly
534 distributed in a compartment.
- 535 Compartments in the particle transport model representing retention of material in
536 each region defined in the Human Respiratory Tract Model:
- 537 *Original HRTM*
538 AI₁ relatively short-term retention (half-time, $t_{1/2}$ about 35 d) of a fraction,
539 taken to be 0.3, of the deposit in the alveolar-interstitial region.

- 540 AI₂ long-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 700 d) of a fraction, taken to be 0.6, of
 541 the deposit in the alveolar-interstitial region.
- 542 AI₃ very long-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 6000 d) of a fraction, taken to be
 543 0.1, of the deposit in the alveolar-interstitial region.
- 544 BB₁ short-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 100 minutes) of particles in the
 545 bronchial region: the particles are removed by rapid mucociliary clearance.
- 546 bb₁ short-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 8 hours) of particles in the bronchiolar
 547 region: the particles are removed by rapid mucociliary clearance.
- 548 BB₂ intermediate retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 20 d) of particles in the bronchial
 549 region.
- 550 bb₂ intermediate retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 20 d) of particles in the bronchiolar
 551 region.
- 552 BB_{seq} long-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 70 d) in airway walls of a small fraction
 553 of the particles deposited in the bronchial region.
- 554 bb_{seq} long-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 70 d) in airway walls of a small fraction
 555 of the particles deposited in the bronchiolar region.
- 556 ET₁ retention of material deposited in the anterior nose (region ET₁, which
 557 is not subdivided).
- 558 ET'₂ short-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 10 minutes) of the material deposited in
 559 the posterior nasal passage, larynx, pharynx and mouth (region ET₂), except
 560 for the small fraction, taken to be 0.0005, retained in ET_{seq}. (In *Publication 66*
 561 this *compartment* was labelled ET₂. It is here, as in *Publication 71*, labelled
 562 ET'₂ to distinguish it from the *region* ET₂ which also includes *compartment*
 563 ET_{seq}.)
- 564 ET_{seq} long-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 700 d) in airway tissue of a small fraction
 565 of particles deposited in the nasal passages.
- 566 LN_{ET} lymphatics and lymph nodes that drain the extrathoracic region.
- 567 LN_{TH} lymphatics and lymph nodes that drain the thoracic regions.
- 568
- 569 *Revised HRTM*
- 570 ET'₂ short-term ($t_{1/2}$ about 10 minutes) of the material deposited in the
 571 posterior nasal passage, larynx and pharynx (ET₂ region) except for the small
 572 fraction (taken to be 0.002) retained in ET_{seq}.
- 573 BB' retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 100 minutes) of particles in the bronchial region,
 574 with particle transport to ET'₂.
- 575 bb' retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 3.5 days) of particles in the bronchiolar region, with
 576 particle transport to BB'.
- 577 BB_{seq} long-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 700 d) in airway walls of a small fraction
 578 of the particles deposited in the bronchial region.

579 bb_{seq} long-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 700 d) in airway walls of a small fraction
580 of the particles deposited in the bronchiolar region.

581 ALV retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 200 d) of particles deposited in the alveoli. A
582 fraction (0.67) of the deposit is removed by particle transport to the ciliated
583 airways (bb'), while the remainder penetrates to the interstitium (INT).

584 INT very long-term retention ($t_{1/2}$ about 60 y) of the particles deposited in
585 the alveoli that penetrate to the interstitium: the particles are removed slowly
586 to the lymph nodes.

587 Deposition

588 Refers to the initial processes determining how much of the material in the
589 inspired air remains behind in the respiratory tract after exhalation. Deposition
590 of material occurs during both inspiration and exhalation.

591 Endogenous excretion

592 Term used to specify the excretion of materials from body fluids to the
593 alimentary tract, applying to biliary excretion and passage of materials through
594 the alimentary tract wall.

595 Endosteum (or endosteal layer)

596 A 50 μm -thick layer covering the surfaces of the bone trabeculae in regions of
597 trabecular spongiosa and those of the cortical surfaces of the medullary
598 cavities within the shafts of all long bones. It is assumed to be the target tissue
599 for radiogenic bone cancer. This target region replaces that previously
600 introduced in ICRP Publications 26 and 30 (ICRP, 1977, 1979) – the bone
601 surfaces – which had been defined as a single-cell layer, 10 μm in thickness,
602 covering the surfaces of both the bone trabeculae and the Haversian canals of
603 cortical bone.

604 Exogenous excretion

605 Term used to specify the (faecal) excretion of material that passes through the
606 alimentary tract without absorption.

607 Extrathoracic (ET) Airways

608 Part of the respiratory tract, consisting of the anterior nose (the ET_1 region)
609 and the posterior nasal passages, pharynx and larynx (the ET_2 region). Note
610 that the oral part of the pharynx is no longer part of ET_2 because it is included
611 in the HATM.

612 Exposure (in the context of inhalation)

613 The product of the air concentration of a radionuclide to which a person is
614 exposed (Bq m^{-3}) and the time of exposure. More generally, when the air
615 concentration varies with time, the time integral of the air concentration of a
616 radionuclide to which a person is exposed, integrated over the time of
617 exposure.

- 618 Fractional absorption in the gastrointestinal tract (f_1)
619 The fraction of an element directly absorbed from the gut to body fluids, used
620 in the Publication 30 gastrointestinal tract model. See also ‘Alimentary tract
621 transfer factor’.
- 622 Habitual Mouth Breather
623 A person who breathes oro-nasally (partly through the nose and partly through
624 the mouth) at all levels of exercise: “sleep”, “sitting” “light exercise” and
625 “heavy exercise”. At “heavy exercise” such a person inhales a greater fraction
626 of air through the mouth than a Nasal Augmenter.
- 627 Habitual Nose Breather
628 A person who breathes entirely through the nose at the exercise level of
629 “heavy exercise” as well as at “sleep”, “sitting” and “light exercise”. Such a
630 person may switch to breathing oro-nasally (partly through the nose and partly
631 through the mouth), but at a ventilation rate greater than the reference value
632 for heavy exercise ($3 \text{ m}^3 \text{ h}^{-1}$).
- 633 Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM)
634 Biokinetic model for describing the movement of ingested materials through
635 the human alimentary tract; published in Publication 100 (ICRP, 2006).
- 636 Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM)
637 Biokinetic model for describing the deposition, translocation and absorption
638 of inhaled materials in the human respiratory tract; published in Publication 66
639 (ICRP, 1994a).
- 640 Inhalability
641 Fraction of particles that enters the nose and mouth, of those present in the
642 volume of ambient air before inspiration.
- 643 Intake. See also ‘Uptake’
644 Activity that enters the respiratory tract or gastrointestinal tract from the
645 environment.
646 Acute intake - a single intake by inhalation or ingestion, taken to occur
647 instantaneously.
648 Chronic intake - a protracted intake over a specified period of time.
- 649 Nasal Augmenter
650 A person who breathes entirely through the nose at the exercise levels of
651 “sleep”, “sitting” and “light exercise”, but oro-nasally (partly through the nose
652 and partly through the mouth) during “heavy exercise”. Also known as a
653 “normal nose breather”, because most people breathe according to this pattern.
654 All reference subjects, including the Reference Worker are assumed to be
655 Nasal Augmenters.

- 656 Normal Nose Breather
657 See 'Nasal Augmenter'.
- 658 Particle transport
659 Processes that clear material from the respiratory tract to the alimentary tract
660 and to the lymph nodes, and move material from one part of the respiratory
661 tract to another.
- 662 Secretory cells
663 Nonciliated epithelial cells that have mucous or serous secretions.
- 664 Subcutaneous tissue
665 Loose fibrous tissue situated directly below the skin. It includes blood vessels,
666 connective tissue, muscle, fat and glands. In the context of intake through
667 wounds, it represents tissue at the wound site in which radionuclides could be
668 retained prior to removal of soluble or dissolved material to blood or insoluble
669 material via lymphatic vessels.
- 670 Target tissues in the bronchial region of the Human Respiratory Tract Model:
671 (See Table 8. For each of the other regions only one target tissue is specified
672 and hence no special symbol is required.)
- 673 BB_{bas} tissue in bronchial region through which basal cell nuclei are
674 distributed.
- 675 BB_{sec} tissue in bronchial region through which secretory cell nuclei are
676 distributed.
- 677 Thermodynamic diameter (d_{th})
678 Diameter (μm) of a spherical particle that has the same diffusion coefficient in
679 air as the particle of interest.
- 680 Thoracic (TH) Airways
681 Combined bronchial, bronchiolar and alveolar-interstitial regions.
- 682 Transfer compartment
683 The compartment introduced for mathematical convenience into many of the
684 biokinetic models previously used by ICRP to account for the translocation of
685 the radioactive material through the body fluids from where they are deposited
686 in tissues.
- 687 Types of materials, classified according to their rates of absorption from the
688 respiratory tract to body fluids:
- 689 Type F deposited materials that are readily absorbed into body fluids
690 from the respiratory tract. (Fast absorption)
- 691 Type M deposited materials that have intermediate rates of absorption
692 into body fluids from the respiratory tract. (Moderate absorption)

693 Type S deposited materials that are relatively insoluble in the
694 respiratory tract. (Slow absorption.)

695 Type V deposited materials that, for dosimetric purposes, are
696 assumed to be instantaneously absorbed into body fluids from the respiratory
697 tract: only certain gases and vapours. (Very fast absorption)

698 Uptake. See also 'Intake'

699 Activity that enters body fluids from the respiratory or alimentary tract or
700 through the skin.

701

702

703 **Terms for Bioassay Interpretation**

704 Action level

705 A pre-set level above which some remedial action should be considered.

706 Activity

707 The number of nuclear transformations per unit time (s) of a radioactive
708 material. The SI unit of the activity is the becquerel (Bq): $1 \text{ Bq} = 1 \text{ s}^{-1}$

709 Bioassay

710 Any procedure used to determine the nature, activity, location or retention of
711 radionuclides in the body by direct (*in vivo*) measurement or by indirect (*in*
712 *vitro*) analysis of material excreted or otherwise removed from the body.

713 Bioassay function

714 In this report series: A set of tabulated values $m(t)$ predicted by the reference
715 biokinetic models describing the time course of the activity in the body
716 ("retention function") or the activity excreted via urine or faeces ("excretion
717 function") following a single intake at time $t = 0$. In general, the retention
718 functions represent the body or organ activity at the time t after the intake,
719 whereas the excretion functions represent the daily excretion: the integral of
720 the instantaneous excretion rate from $(t - 1)$ until t , where t is the number of
721 days after a single intake (integer).

722 Decision Threshold

723 Fixed value of a measured quantity that, when exceeded by the result of an
724 actual measurement quantifying a physical effect (e.g. the presence of a
725 radionuclide in a sample), may be taken to indicate that the physical effect is
726 present. The decision threshold is the critical value of a statistical test for the
727 decision between the hypothesis that the physical effect is not present and the
728 alternative hypothesis that it is present. When the critical value is exceeded by
729 the result of an actual measurement, this is taken to indicate that the
730 hypothesis should be rejected. The statistical test is designed in such a way
731 that the probability of wrongly rejecting the hypothesis (Type I error) is at
732 most equal to a given value, α . The decision threshold is an *a posteriori*

- 733 quantity, evaluated after a particular measurement in order to decide whether
734 the result of the measurement is significant. The decision threshold is also
735 referred as the critical level or the minimum significant activity.
- 736 Direct measurement
737 Generic term for any kind of *in vivo* measurement of incorporated
738 radionuclides (*i.e.* whole body counting, lung counting, thyroid counting, etc.).
- 739 Excretion function.
740 See 'Bioassay function'.
- 741 Excretion rate
742 In general, the excretion rate is the amount of activity which is excreted via
743 urine or faeces during a 24 hour period, with the decay of the radionuclide
744 having been corrected for the end of the 24 hour sampling period.
- 745 Investigation level
746 A pre-set level above which the cause or the implications of an intake should
747 be examined (ICRP, 1997b). Investigation levels can be set for any operational
748 parameter related to the individual or to the working environment. For
749 individual monitoring of exposure to intakes of radionuclides, they are most
750 likely to relate to a measured body or organ/tissue content, an activity level in
751 excreta, or an air concentration measured by a personal air sampler.
- 752 Measured quantity (*M*)
753 Primary result of incorporation monitoring; the measured quantity represents
754 in the case of *in vivo* measurements the whole body, organ or tissue activity
755 (Bq) and in the case of *in vitro* measurements the daily excretion rate (Bq d⁻¹,
756 Bq l⁻¹, or Bq kg⁻¹).
- 757 Minimum Detectable Amount (MDA)
758 The smallest true value of a measured quantity that is detectable by the
759 measuring method. The MDA is the smallest true value that is associated with
760 the statistical test and hypothesis in accordance with the Decision Threshold,
761 as follows: if in reality the true value is equal to or exceeds the MDA, the
762 probability of wrongly not rejecting the hypothesis (Type II error) is at most
763 equal to a given value, β . The MDA is an *a priori* quantity, evaluated for a
764 particular measurement method in advance of the performance of a
765 measurement. The MDA is also referred as the detection limit or the lower
766 limit of detection; the term 'MDA' is also used as an abbreviation for
767 minimum detectable activity.
- 768 Recording level
769 A pre-set level above which a result should be recorded, lower values being
770 ignored.
- 771 Retention function.
772 See 'Bioassay function'.

- 773 Threshold levels
- 774 Values of measured quantities above which some specified action or decision
- 775 should be taken. They include:
- 776 Recording levels, above which a result should be recorded, lower values being
- 777 ignored;
- 778 Investigation levels, above which the cause or the implication of the result
- 779 should be examined;
- 780 Action levels, above which some remedial action should be considered.
- 781

782

1 INTRODUCTION

783

1.1 Purpose of this report series

784 (1) Occupational intakes of radionuclides may occur during routine operations in
785 a range of industrial, medical, educational and research facilities. They may also occur
786 as a result of a nuclear accident, after an incident involving radioactive material,
787 during post-accident remediation work at a nuclear installation, or during
788 environmental remediation activities.

789 (2) An adequate assessment of occupational internal exposure resulting from
790 intakes of radionuclides is essential for the design, planning and authorisation of a
791 facility or activity, for the optimisation of radiation protection of workers, for
792 operational radiation protection and for the retrospective demonstration of compliance
793 with regulatory requirements.

794 (3) After intake of radionuclides, doses received by organs and tissues are
795 protracted over time and so equivalent and effective doses are accumulated over time.
796 The resulting quantities are referred to as committed doses.

797 (4) Internal exposure of workers should be assessed in terms of the protection
798 quantity *committed effective dose*. The individual exposure of a worker should be
799 assessed and recorded in terms of *dose of record*, which takes into account both
800 internal and external exposures.

801 (5) This report series provides a comprehensive set of dose coefficients (i.e.
802 committed effective dose and committed equivalent dose per unit intake (DPUI)) and
803 also provides values for committed effective dose and committed equivalent dose per
804 unit content (DPUC).

805 (6) These data may be used for both prospective assessments and retrospective
806 assessments. Prospective assessments provide estimates of intakes and resulting doses
807 for workers engaged in specific activities using information on potential exposures to
808 radionuclides obtained at the design and planning stage of a facility or practice.
809 Retrospective assessments use the results of individual monitoring and workplace
810 monitoring to assess doses in order to maintain individual dose records and
811 demonstrate compliance with regulatory requirements. Prospective assessments
812 generally make use of default assumptions about exposure conditions and default
813 values for parameters describing material-specific properties such as the particle size
814 distribution of an inhaled aerosol or the absorption characteristics of a material after
815 inhalation or ingestion. Retrospective assessments may in some circumstances make
816 use of specific information relating to the exposure, as discussed in Chapter 6.

817 (7) The report series contains detailed information on the ICRP reference models
818 used for the derivation of dose coefficients. The information provided in this first
819 report of the series includes a description of revisions made to the ICRP reference
820 Human Respiratory Tract Model (ICRP, 1994a) and an overview of the ICRP
821 reference Human Alimentary Tract Model (ICRP, 2006). Subsequent reports in the
822 series present descriptions of the structures and parameter values of the reference
823 systemic biokinetic models,

824 (8) This report also presents an overview of monitoring methods and
825 programmes, and generic guidance on the interpretation of the bioassay data.

826 Subsequent reports in the series present radionuclide-specific information for the
827 design and planning of monitoring programmes and retrospective assessment of
828 occupational internal doses.

829 (9) The material presented in this report series is not intended for applications
830 beyond the scope of occupational radiation protection. An example of such an
831 application is the assessment of a case of substantial radionuclide intake, where organ
832 doses can approach or exceed the thresholds for tissue reactions, and where medical
833 treatment may require an individual-specific reconstruction of the magnitude of
834 absorbed doses and associated parameters characterising the exposure.

835

836

1.2 Protection quantities and dose coefficients in this report series

837 (10) The protection quantities defined by ICRP, equivalent dose and effective dose,
838 are fundamental to the application of ICRP recommendations. The concept of
839 effective dose provides a single quantity that may be used to characterise both internal
840 and external individual exposures in a manner that is independent of the individual's
841 body-related parameters, such as sex, age (for adults), anatomy, physiology and race.
842 In order to achieve wide applicability, the protection quantities (effective dose and
843 equivalent dose) are defined using computational models with broad averaging of
844 physiological parameter values. Specifically, Publication 89 (ICRP 1975, 2002)
845 defines the key parameters of the Reference Individuals (the mass, geometry and
846 composition of human organs and tissues), while this report series provides relevant
847 parameters for the Reference Worker (ICRP 1994) together with an associated set of
848 ICRP reference biokinetic models.

849 (11) Effective dose is not an individual-specific dose quantity, but rather the dose
850 to a Reference Person under specified exposure conditions. In the general case, the
851 Reference Person can be either a Reference Worker (see Glossary) or a Reference
852 Member of the Public of a specified age.

853 (12) The protection quantities for internal exposure (committed effective dose and
854 committed equivalent dose) are derived using models and are not directly measurable.
855 For retrospective assessments of internal exposure, the dose can be assessed from
856 measurements of the amounts of radionuclides in the human body, their rates of
857 excretion or their concentrations in the ambient air. In contrast, the operational
858 quantities for exposure to external radiation fields are directly measurable.

859 (13) The dose coefficients and dose per unit content values presented in this report
860 series are given for a Reference Worker with an average breathing rate of $1.2 \text{ m}^3 \text{ h}^{-1}$
861 during an 8 h working day.. These data are provided for a range of physico-chemical
862 forms for each radionuclide and for a range of aerosol particle size distributions. Data
863 for ingestion and injection (i.e. direct entry to the blood) are provided to allow the
864 interpretation of bioassay data for cases of inadvertent ingestion (e.g. of material on
865 contaminated skin) or rapid absorption through intact or damaged skin (injection).

866 (14) While the generic definition of protection quantities remains unchanged in the
867 most recent recommendations (ICRP, 2007), there have been changes that affect
868 calculated values of dose per unit radiation exposure, including changes to radiation
869 and tissue weighting factors, adoption of reference computational phantoms (ICRP,
870 2009), and the development of the new generation of reference biokinetic models.

871 (15) This report series provides revised dose coefficients for occupational intakes
872 of radionuclides (OIR) replacing the Publication 30 series (ICRP, 1979, 1980, 1981,
873 1988b) and Publication 68 (ICRP, 1994b).

874 (16) Data for the interpretation of bioassay measurements are also provided,
875 replacing Publications 54 and 78 (ICRP, 1988a, 1997b) and consolidating all of the
876 information needed to interpret the results of bioassay measurements for a particular
877 radionuclide in a single ICRP publication.

878 (17) The full data set of the report series is provided as an electronic annex on the
879 attached CD-ROMs. The printed documents contain a selected set of data and
880 materials.

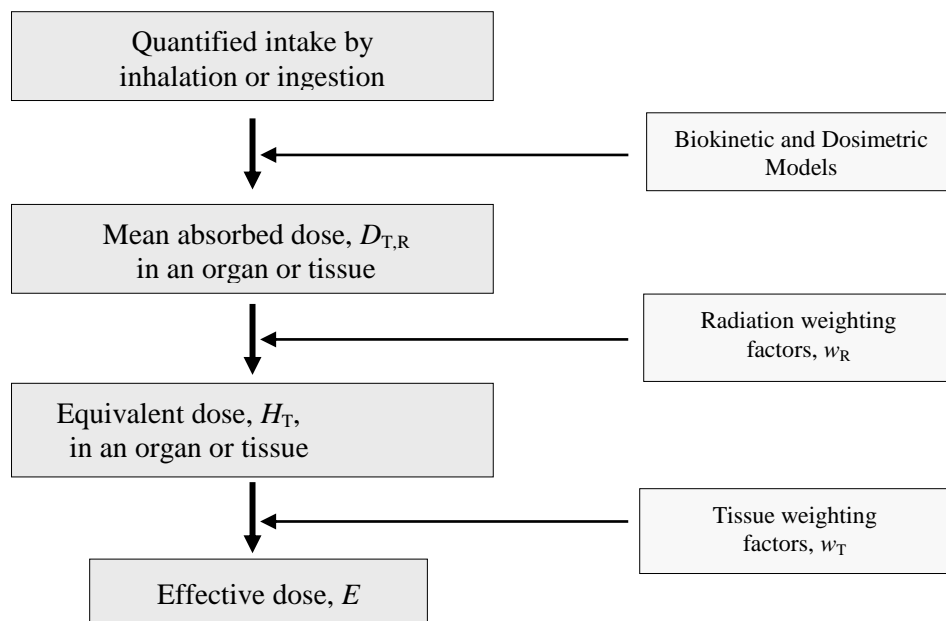
881 (18) Data are presented in a standard format for each element and its radioisotopes.
882 Tabulated dose coefficients may be used to determine committed effective dose and
883 committed equivalent doses from a known intake of a radionuclide. Tabulated values
884 for dose per unit content may be used to assess committed doses directly from
885 measurements of appropriate bioassay quantities (e.g. radionuclide activity in whole
886 body or lungs, or daily excretion of a radionuclide in urine or faeces). Similarly,
887 values of radionuclide activities per unit intake in the body or in daily excreta
888 samples, presented in tabular and graphical formats, may be used to assess the intake
889 corresponding to a single bioassay measurement. Committed doses may then be
890 assessed from the intake using the tabulated dose coefficients. A full description of
891 the information provided for each element and radioisotope is given in Chapter 7.

892 (19) The revised dose coefficients, dose per unit content values and reference
893 bioassay functions have been calculated using the Publication 100 (ICRP, 2006)
894 Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM) and a revision of the Publication 66 (ICRP,
895 1994a) Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM) which takes account of more recent
896 data. The revisions made to the HRTM are described in Section 3.2 of this report. In
897 addition, information is provided in this report series on absorption to blood
898 following inhalation and ingestion of different chemical forms of elements and their
899 radioisotopes, in those cases for which it is currently judged that the data are
900 sufficient to make specific recommendations. Revisions have been made to many
901 models for the systemic biokinetics of radionuclides, making them more
902 physiologically realistic representations of uptake and retention in organs and tissues
903 and of excretion.

904
905 (20) Biokinetic models, reference physiological data, computational phantoms and
906 radiation transport calculation codes are used for the calculation of dose coefficients
907 (ICRP, 2007). ICRP publishes dose coefficients for the inhalation or ingestion of
908 individual radionuclides by workers, giving both equivalent doses to organs and
909 tissues, and effective dose (ICRP, 1991, 2007). The steps in the calculation (Figure 1)
910 can be summarised as follows:

- 911
- 912 • By use of the reference biokinetic models, the distribution and retention of
913 radionuclides in body organs and tissues of the Reference Worker are
914 determined as a function of time after intake by inhalation or ingestion For
915 radiation protection purposes, it assumed that all biokinetic parameters of the
916 Reference Worker are invariant on sex, anatomy, physiology, race and other

- 917 individual-related factors.
- 918 • The total number of nuclear transformations (radioactive decays) occurring
 - 919 within a defined time period in each source region is calculated
 - 920 • The dosimetric models based on reference computational phantoms and Monte
 - 921 Carlo radiation transport codes are used to calculate the mean absorbed dose to
 - 922 each target organ or tissue resulting from a nuclear disintegration in each
 - 923 source organ.
 - 924 • The radiation weighting factors are applied to determine sex-specific
 - 925 committed equivalent doses.
 - 926 • The tissue weighting factors are then applied to determine the sex-averaged
 - 927 committed effective dose.
 - 928
 - 929



930
 931 Figure 1. Calculation of absorbed dose and the ICRP protection quantities, equivalent and
 932 effective dose, for intakes of radionuclides
 933

934 (21) The detailed computational procedure used in this report series is described in
 935 section 3.7.

936 1.3 Previous reports on occupational intakes of radionuclides

938 (22) Publication 30 (ICRP, 1979, 1980, 1981, 1988b) and its Supplements gave
 939 dose coefficients and values of Annual Limits on Intake (ALI) for workers, for intakes
 940 of radionuclides by inhalation and ingestion, referencing the recommendations issued
 941 in Publication 26 (ICRP, 1977) and the anatomical and physiological data in
 942 Reference Man (ICRP, 1975). Publication 68 (ICRP, 1994b) provided updated dose
 943 coefficients for workers following the 1990 Recommendations issued in Publication
 944 60 (ICRP, 1991). It applied the Publication 66 HRTM (ICRP, 1994a) for inhaled
 945 radionuclides, the updated basic anatomical and physiological data for the skeleton in

946 Publication 70 (ICRP, 1995b) and revised systemic biokinetic models for selected
947 isotopes of 31 elements given in Publications 56, 67, 69 and 71 (ICRP, 1989, 1993b,
948 1995a,c). Biokinetic models for other elements were taken from Publication 30 and
949 modified by addition of explicit excretion pathways to improve dose estimates for the
950 urinary bladder and colon walls. Publication 68 did not give ALIs, as ICRP wished to
951 emphasise the need to take account of all exposures to ionising radiation in the
952 workplace, from external radiation and intakes of all radionuclides.

953 (23) Publications 54 and 78 gave guidance on the design of monitoring
954 programmes and the interpretation of results to estimate doses to workers following
955 radionuclide inhalation or ingestion (ICRP, 1988a, 1997b). The guidance was
956 supported by numerical data to enable the assessment of intakes and doses from
957 bioassay data (that is, measurements of body and organ content, and daily urinary and
958 faecal excretion). These data were provided for a number of radionuclides selected as
959 those most likely to be encountered in the workplace. Predicted values of the
960 measured quantities for various times after a single intake or for routine monitoring
961 were given in terms of the activity of the intake per unit activity measured. Standard
962 dose coefficients would then be used to calculate effective dose from the assessed
963 intake.

964

965 **1.4 Changes in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) that affect the calculation of** 966 **equivalent and effective dose**

967 (24) In the 2007 Recommendations issued in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007), the
968 concept and use of equivalent and effective dose remain unchanged, but a number of
969 revisions were made to the methods used in their calculation. Changes were
970 introduced in the radiation and tissue weighting factors, from the values previously
971 recommended in Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991). Since radiation weighting factors (w_R)
972 for photons, electron and alpha particles are unchanged, the only difference of
973 potential importance to internally deposited radionuclides is for neutrons (Table 1).
974 The changes made do not reflect the availability of additional data but rather a
975 reconsideration of the appropriate treatment of radiation weighting for protection
976 purposes. The abandonment of a step function for neutron w_R as a function of energy
977 is a reflection of the fact that in practice only a continuous function has been used.
978 The major change in the continuous function is a lower w_R value at low energies
979 which more properly reflects the low LET contribution from secondary photons. In
980 addition, there are good theoretical reasons for assuming that w_R values at high
981 energies will converge with that for protons.

982

983 Table 1. ICRP radiation weighting factors

Radiation Type	Radiation Weighting Factor, w_R	
	Publication 103	Publication 60
Photons	1	1
Electrons and muons	1	1
Protons and charged pions	2	5*
Alpha particles, fission fragments, heavy ions	20	20
Neutrons	Revised continuous function of neutron energy	Step and continuous functions of neutron energy

984

985

*Pions were not considered

986

987

988

989

990

991

992

993

994

995

996

997

998

999

1000

1001

1002

1003

(25) The values of tissue weighting factors (w_T) recommended in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) are shown in Table 2. Changes from values given in Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991) reflect improved knowledge of radiation risks. The main sources of data on cancer risks were the follow-up studies of the Japanese atomic bomb survivors, used to derive risk coefficients averaged over seven Western and Asian populations with different background cancer rates (ICRP, 2007). The new w_T values are based on cancer incidence rather than fatality data, adjusted for lethality, loss of quality of life and years of life lost. Weighting for hereditary effects is now based on estimates of disease in the first two generations rather than at theoretical equilibrium. The main changes in w_T values in the 2007 Recommendations are an increase for breast (from 0.05 to 0.12), a decrease for gonads (from 0.2 to 0.08) and inclusion of more organs and tissues in a larger ‘Remainder’ (from 0.05 to 0.12). The remainder dose is now calculated as the arithmetic mean of the doses to the thirteen organs and tissues for each sex (Table 2). Tissue weighting factors continue to represent averages across the sexes and across all ages.

Table 2. Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) tissue weighting factors

Tissue	w_T	$\sum w_T$
Bone-marrow, breast, colon, lung, stomach, remainder tissues (13*)	0.12	0.72
Gonads	0.08	0.08
Urinary bladder, oesophagus, liver, thyroid	0.04	0.16
Bone surface, brain, salivary glands, skin	0.01	0.04

1004

1005

1006

1007

1008

*Remainder Tissues: adrenals, extrathoracic (ET) regions of the respiratory tract, gall bladder, heart, kidneys, lymphatic nodes, muscle, oral mucosa, pancreas, prostate (male), small intestine, spleen, thymus, uterus/cervix (female).

1009

1010

1011

1012

1013

1014

1015

(26) A further important change introduced in the 2007 Recommendations is that doses from external and internal sources are calculated using reference computational phantoms of the human body (ICRP, 2009). In the past, the Commission did not specify a particular phantom, and in fact various mathematical phantoms such as hermaphrodite MIRD-type phantoms (Snyder *et al*, 1969), the sex-specific models of Kramer *et al* (1982), or the age-specific phantoms of Cristy and Eckerman (1987) have been used. Voxel models, constructed from medical imaging data of real people,

1016 give a more realistic description of the human body than afforded in mathematical (or
 1017 stylised) phantoms. Thus, the ICRP decided to use voxel models to define the
 1018 reference phantoms to be used in the calculations of dose distribution in the body for
 1019 both internal and external exposures. These models (or computational phantoms),
 1020 described in Publication 110 (ICRP, 2009), represent the Reference Male and Female,
 1021 and have organ masses in compliance with the reference anatomical values compiled
 1022 in Publication 89 (ICRP, 2002). These phantoms are designed specifically for the
 1023 calculation of the radiological protection quantities corresponding to the effective
 1024 dose concept of the 2007 Recommendations.

1025

1026 (27) Equivalent doses to organs and tissues, H_T , are calculated separately for the
 1027 Reference Male and Reference Female and then averaged in the calculation of
 1028 effective dose, E :

$$E = \sum_T w_T \left[\frac{H_T^M + H_T^F}{2} \right]$$

Where :

$$H_T^M = \sum_T w_R D_{T,R} \quad (\text{male})$$

$$H_T^F = \sum_T w_R D_{T,R} \quad (\text{female})$$

1029 (28) It is made clear in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) that effective dose is
 1030 intended for use as a protection quantity on the basis of reference values and relates to
 1031 reference persons rather than specific individuals. The main uses of effective dose are
 1032 in prospective dose assessment for planning and optimisation in radiological
 1033 protection, and retrospective demonstration of compliance for regulatory purposes.
 1034 Sex-averaging in the calculation of equivalent and effective doses, implicit in the past
 1035 use of hermaphrodite mathematical phantoms, is now explicit in the averaging of
 1036 equivalent doses to adult male and female phantoms. Sex- and age-averaging in the
 1037 derivation of tissue weighting factors can be seen to obscure differences in estimates
 1038 of absolute radiation detriment between men and women and between adults and
 1039 children. However, practical protection would not be improved by calculating
 1040 effective dose separately for males and females and to do so might give a misleading
 1041 impression of the precision of these quantities.

1042

1043

1.5 Biokinetic models implemented in this report

1044 (29) Biokinetic models for individual elements and their radioisotopes are used to
 1045 calculate the total number of transformations occurring within specific tissues, organs
 1046 or body regions (source regions) during a given period of time (usually 50 y for
 1047 adults, or to age 70 y for children) by determining the time-integrated activity in each
 1048 source region. Dosimetric models are used to calculate the deposition of energy in all
 1049 important organs/tissues (targets) for transformations occurring in each source region,
 1050 taking account of the energies and yields of all emissions (Eckerman, 1994).

1051 Committed absorbed dose in grays can then be calculated, knowing the number of
1052 decays occurring in source regions and energy deposition in target regions.

1053 (30) Biokinetic models of the alimentary and respiratory tracts are used to define
1054 the movement of radionuclides within these systems, resulting in absorption to blood
1055 and/or loss from the body. The behaviour of radionuclides absorbed to blood is
1056 described by element-specific systemic models that range in complexity. These
1057 models are intended both for the derivation of dose coefficients and the interpretation
1058 of bioassay data. The models used in this report are as given below, with more
1059 information provided in Chapter 3.

1060

1061 1.5.1 Human Respiratory Tract Model

1062 (31) The Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM) described in Publication 66
1063 (ICRP, 1994a) has been updated in this report to take account of data accumulated
1064 since its publication, although the basic features of the model remain unchanged.
1065 Inhaled particles containing radionuclides deposit in the extrathoracic airways (nose,
1066 larynx, etc.), the bronchial and bronchiolar airways of the lung and the alveolar
1067 interstitial region, with deposition in the different regions being mainly dependent on
1068 particle size (ICRP, 1994a, 2002b). Removal from the respiratory tract occurs mainly
1069 by dissolution and absorption to blood and the competing process of transport of
1070 particles to the throat followed by their entry into the alimentary tract. The
1071 proportions absorbed to blood or cleared by particle transport depend on the
1072 speciation and the solubility of the material, and on the radioactive half-life of the
1073 radionuclide. The ICRP model for the respiratory tract is also applied here to gases
1074 and vapours and to inhalation of radon and its radioactive progeny.

1075 (32) For absorption to blood, the main changes introduced in this report are:

- 1076 • Redefinition of the Type F, M and S absorption defaults: larger f_r values for M
1077 and S of 0.2 and 0.01, rather than 0.1 and 0.001, respectively, with lower s_r
1078 values of 3 d^{-1} for M and S, and 30 d^{-1} for F, rather than 100 d^{-1} .
- 1079 • Material-specific parameter values for the rapid dissolution fraction (f_r) and the
1080 rapid and slow dissolution rates (s_r and s_s) in selected cases where sufficient
1081 information is available (*e.g.* forms of uranium).
- 1082 • Element-specific values of s_r and the bound state parameters, f_b and s_b , where
1083 sufficient information is available.
- 1084 • Revised treatment of gases and vapours in which solubility and reactivity are
1085 defined in terms of the proportion deposited in the respiratory tract. The
1086 default assumption is 100% deposition (20% ET₂, 10% BB, 20% bb and 50%
1087 AD), and Type F absorption. The SR-0, -1, -2 classification has not been found
1088 to be helpful and is not used.

1089 (33) For clearance by particle transport the main changes are:

- 1090 • More realistic clearance from the nasal passage, including transfer from the
1091 anterior to the posterior region, based on recent human experimental studies.
- 1092 • Revised characteristics of slow particle clearance from the bronchial tree based
1093 on recent human experimental studies; it is now assumed that it occurs only in
1094 the bronchioles rather than as a particle size dependent phenomenon
1095 throughout the bronchial tree.

- 1096 • Longer retention in the alveolar-interstitial region of the lung, with a revised
1097 model structure, based on recent data including long-term follow-up of
1098 workers exposed to insoluble ^{60}Co particles, and plutonium dioxide.
1099

1100 **1.5.2 Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM), Publication 100 (ICRP,**
1101 **2006)**

1102 (34) The Publication 30 (ICRP, 1979) model of the gastrointestinal tract has been
1103 replaced by the Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM) described in Publication
1104 100 (ICRP, 2006). The main features of the HATM can be summarised as follows:

- 1105 • Inclusion of all alimentary tract regions: oral cavity, oesophagus, stomach,
1106 small intestine, right colon, left colon and rectosigmoid (the sigmoid colon and
1107 rectum).
- 1108 • A default assumption that absorption of an element and its radioisotopes to
1109 blood occurs exclusively in the small intestine, *i.e.* the total fractional
1110 absorption, f_A equals the fractional absorption from the small intestine, f_{SI} .
1111 Model structure to allow for absorption in other regions, where information is
1112 available.
- 1113 • A model structure that allows for retention in the mucosal tissues of the walls
1114 of alimentary tract regions, and on teeth, where information is available.
- 1115 • Explicit specification of the location of target regions for cancer induction
1116 within each alimentary tract region.

1117
1118 **1.5.3 Systemic models**

1119 (35) A systemic model describes the time-dependent distribution and retention of a
1120 radionuclide in the body after it reaches the systemic circulation, and its excretion
1121 from the body. In contrast to ICRP's current and past biokinetic models describing the
1122 behaviour of radionuclides in the respiratory and alimentary tracts, ICRP's systemic
1123 models have generally been element-specific with regard to model structure as well as
1124 parameter values. A single generic model structure that depicts all potentially
1125 important systemic repositories and paths of transfer of all elements of interest in
1126 radiation protection would be too complex to be of much practical use. However,
1127 generic model structures have been used in previous ICRP documents to address the
1128 systemic biokinetics of groups of elements, typically chemical families, known (or
1129 expected to have) qualitatively similar behaviour in the body. For example,
1130 Publication 20 (ICRP, 1973) introduced a generic model formulation for the alkaline
1131 earth elements calcium, strontium, barium and radium, but provided element-specific
1132 values for most model parameters. In Parts 1-3 of Publication 30 (ICRP, 1979, 1980,
1133 1981) a model developed for plutonium, including parameter values as well as model
1134 structure, was applied to most actinide elements. The use of generic systemic model
1135 structures was increased in ICRP's reports on doses to members of the public from
1136 intake of radionuclides (ICRP, 1993b, 1995a, 1995c) and is further expanded in this
1137 report because it facilitates the development, description, and application of systemic
1138 biokinetic models. An important development is that, as the availability of data
1139 allows, models have been made to be physiologically realistic with regard to the

1140 dynamics of organ retention and excretion so that they are applicable to the
1141 interpretation of bioassay data as well as the calculation of dose coefficients.

1142

1143

1.6 Dosimetry implemented in this report

1144 (36) Dose calculations involve the use of nuclear decay data, anthropomorphic
1145 phantoms that describe the human anatomy and codes that simulate radiation
1146 transport and energy deposition in the body. The data provided in this report are
1147 calculated using revised decay data (Publication 107, ICRP, 2008), the ICRP
1148 reference computational phantoms of the adult male and female based on medical
1149 imaging data (Publication 110, ICRP, 2009) and well-established Monte Carlo codes
1150 (Kawrakow et al, 2009), (Pelowitz, 2008), Niita et al, 2010. .

1151 (37) For all dose calculations, radionuclides are assumed to be uniformly
1152 distributed throughout source regions, although these can be whole organs (*e.g.* liver)
1153 or a thin layer within a tissue (*e.g.* bone surfaces). Similarly, target cells are assumed
1154 to be uniformly distributed throughout target regions that vary in size from whole
1155 organs to layers of cells. Doses from ‘cross-fire’ radiation between source and target
1156 tissues are important for penetrating photon radiation. For ‘non-penetrating’ alpha and
1157 beta particle radiations, energy will in most cases be largely deposited in the tissue in
1158 which the radionuclide is deposited. Photon and electron transport is followed for
1159 most source and target combinations. Additionally special considerations are taken
1160 into account for alpha and beta emissions in a number of important cases. These
1161 include:

- 1162 • Doses to target cells in the walls of the respiratory tract airways from
1163 radionuclides in the airways (ICRP, 1994a).
- 1164 • Doses to target regions in the alimentary tract from radionuclides in the lumen
1165 (ICRP, 2006).
- 1166 • Doses to cells adjacent to inner bone surfaces (50 μm layer; see below) and all
1167 red marrow from radionuclides on bone surfaces and within bone mineral.

1168

1169

1.6.1 Nuclear Decay Data, Publication 107 (ICRP, 2008)

1170 (38) A fundamental requirement for dose calculations is reliable information on
1171 half-life, modes of decay, and the energies and yields of the various radiations emitted
1172 by nuclides and their progeny (Eckerman *et al*, 1994; Endo *et al* 2003, 2004). The
1173 calculations in this report use the nuclear decay data provided in Publication 107
1174 (ICRP, 2008). This publication replaces Publication 38 (ICRP, 1983) and consists of
1175 an explanatory text, with an accompanying CD-ROM, providing data on the radiation
1176 emissions of 1252 radioisotopes of 97 elements. Radioisotopes of elements of atomic
1177 number less than 101 were included in Publication 107 if their half-lives exceed one
1178 minute or if they are the progeny of a selected radionuclide and if the basic nuclear
1179 structure data enabled a meaningful analysis of their emissions. Presentation using
1180 CD-ROM has enabled the complete listing of emitted radiations, and more details of
1181 Auger cascades and spontaneous fission data. The data given include: energies and
1182 intensities of emitted radiations; beta, neutron and Auger-CK spectra; spontaneous
1183 fission radiations and alpha recoil; half-lives, branching decay and chains; and no cut-
1184 off on the number of emissions.

1185

1186 **1.6.2 Adult Reference Computational Phantoms, Publication 110 (ICRP,**
1187 **2009)**

1188 (39) Traditionally, stylised computational phantoms of human anatomy have been
1189 utilised for assembling dose coefficients for both external and internal radiation
1190 protection. These phantoms are constructed using mathematical surface equations to
1191 describe internal organ anatomy and exterior body surfaces of reference individuals
1192 (Cristy, 1980; Cristy and Eckerman, 1987), and as such, are limited in their ability to
1193 capture true anatomic realism completely. As an alternative format for radiation
1194 transport simulation, voxel phantoms are based on segmented tomographic data of
1195 real individuals obtained from computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging
1196 (Zankl *et al*, 2002, 2003, 2007). As outlined above, the 2007 Recommendations
1197 adopted the use of realistic anatomical models for the revision of dose coefficients for
1198 both internal and external radiation sources. Publication 110 (ICRP, 2009) describes
1199 the development and intended use of the computational phantoms of the ICRP adult
1200 Reference Male and Reference Female. The reference phantoms were constructed
1201 after modifying the voxel models of two individuals whose body height and mass
1202 closely matched reference values. Organ volumes of both models were adjusted to
1203 yield organ masses consistent with ICRP reference data given in Publication 89
1204 (ICRP, 2002a) without compromising their anatomic realism regarding organ shape,
1205 depth, and position in the body. The report describes the methods used for this
1206 process and the anatomical and computational characteristics of the resulting
1207 phantoms.

1208 (40) The computational phantoms of adult Reference Male and Female may be
1209 used, together with codes that simulate radiation transport and energy deposition, for
1210 the assessment of the mean absorbed dose, D_T , in an organ or tissue T, from which
1211 equivalent doses and the effective dose may be successively calculated.

1212

1213 **1.6.3 Advances in skeletal dosimetry**

1214 (41) In this report, the skeletal dosimetry models of Publication 30 (ICRP, 1979)
1215 have been substantially updated for all radiations emitted from internalised
1216 radionuclides – alpha particles, electrons, beta particles, photons, and neutrons (e.g.
1217 from spontaneous fission). Improvements over the Publication 30 model include a
1218 more refined treatment of the dependence of the absorbed fraction on particle energy,
1219 marrow cellularity, and bone-specific spongiosa micro-architecture. Two reference
1220 sets of skeletal images were established for radiation transport simulation. The first
1221 included 1-mm *ex vivo* CT images of some 38 skeletal sites harvested from a 40-year
1222 male cadaver (Hough *et al*, 2011). These images were used to establish fractional
1223 volumes of cortical bone, trabecular spongiosa, and medullary cavities by skeletal
1224 site, and to serve as the *macroscopic* geometric model for particle transport. The
1225 second included 30- μm microCT images of cored samples of trabecular spongiosa to
1226 establish fractional volumes of trabecular bone and marrow tissues, and to serve as
1227 the *microscopic* geometric model for particle transport. Both image sets were then
1228 combined during paired-image radiation transport (PIRT) of internally emitted
1229 electrons (Shah *et al*, 2005). Source tissues were: bone marrow (active and inactive),

1230 mineral bone surfaces (trabecular and cortical), and mineral bone volumes (trabecular
1231 and cortical). Target tissues considered were: active marrow (surrogate tissue for the
1232 hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells), and a revised 50- μm model of the skeletal
1233 endosteum (surrogate tissue for the osteoprogenitor cells) (see ‘Endosteum’ in the
1234 Glossary). Absorbed fractions for internalised alpha particles and neutron-generated
1235 recoil protons were established based on path length-based transport algorithms given
1236 in Jokisch *et al* (2011a, 2011b). Values of absorbed fractions to active marrow and
1237 endosteum for internally-emitted photons and neutrons were obtained by first tallying
1238 energy-dependent particle fluences within the spongiosa and medullary cavity regions
1239 of the Publication 110 reference adult male and female voxel phantoms (ICRP, 2009)
1240 and then applying fluence-to-absorbed dose response functions (DRFs). Further
1241 details on the derivations of these photon and neutron skeletal dose-response
1242 functions are given in Johnson *et al* (2011) and Bahadori *et al* (2011), respectively, as
1243 well as in Annexes D and E of Publication 116 (ICRP, 2010).

1244
1245

1.7 Interpretation of bioassay data

1246 (42) The system of dose assessment from bioassay data that is generally applied
1247 relies first on the evaluation of the intake of a radionuclide either from direct
1248 measurements (*e.g.* external monitoring of the whole body or of specific organs and
1249 tissues) or indirect measurements (*e.g.* of urine, faeces or environmental samples).
1250 Predicted values of these measured quantities for unit intake of a radionuclide are
1251 recommended by ICRP and these values can be used to estimate the intake (ICRP,
1252 1997b). The committed effective dose resulting from any intake is then calculated
1253 using the appropriate dose coefficient recommended by ICRP or determined using
1254 ICRP’s recommended methodology. In some cases national authorities require the
1255 assessment of the intake of a radionuclide as well as formal assessment of dose. The
1256 data provided also serve this purpose.

1257 (43) It is possible, as discussed by Berkovski *et al* (2003a), to calculate committed
1258 effective dose directly from bioassay measurements using functions that relate them
1259 to the time of the intake. The main advantage of this approach is that the user does not
1260 perform the intermediate step of calculating the intake in order to evaluate the dose.
1261 This eliminates the risk of using bioassay functions calculated with a particular
1262 biokinetic model and dose coefficients derived from a different (earlier or more
1263 recent) version of that model. This has been shown to be a rather frequent cause of
1264 miscalculations in intercomparison exercises (IAEA, 2007).

1265 (44) Whichever approach is adopted, the assessed dose is in many cases less
1266 sensitive to the choice of parameter values than is the assessed intake. Berkovski *et al*
1267 (2003a) showed that for a number of chemical forms of radionuclides the ‘dose per
1268 unit content’ is largely insensitive to the choice of inhaled particle size for a wide
1269 range of measurement times following an intake. In such circumstances the need for
1270 specific information on the appropriate activity median aerodynamic diameter
1271 (AMAD) of an aerosol may not therefore arise. Similarly, dose per unit content may
1272 be insensitive to the choice of absorption Type for the specific chemical form
1273 involved, for specific ranges of measurement times after the intake.) Care is still

1274 needed in the choice of the most appropriate measurement data and in defining the
1275 time of the intake.

1276 (45) Effective dose assessed from bioassay measurements is relatively insensitive
1277 to choice of parameter values when the measured quantity is directly related to an
1278 organ dose that makes a dominant contribution to the effective dose, *e.g.* in the case
1279 of lung retention measurements after inhalation of an insoluble ^{60}Co compound,
1280 where lung dose dominates the effective dose. However, sensitivity to parameter
1281 values may be much higher when the measured quantity is not so closely related to the
1282 effective dose, for instance when lung dose makes a dominant contribution to
1283 effective dose and urine monitoring is employed. For such a case, the results of urine
1284 monitoring can provide a reliable measure of doses to systemic organs, but assessed
1285 lung dose is sensitive to choice of absorption parameter values. An example is the
1286 assessment of effective dose from urine monitoring data after inhalation of an
1287 insoluble ^{239}Pu compound.

1288 **1.8 Structure of the Report**

1289 (46) This report series provides revised dose coefficients for occupational intakes
1290 of radionuclides (OIR) by inhalation and ingestion, replacing the Publication 30 series
1291 (ICRP, 1979, 1980, 1981, 1988b) and Publication 68 (ICRP, 1994b). It also provides
1292 data for the interpretation of bioassay measurements, replacing Publications 54 and 78
1293 (ICRP, 1988a, 1997b).

1294 (47) Chapter 2 of this report discusses the application of dose limits and constraints
1295 to the control of occupational exposures to radionuclides. It also outlines the
1296 objectives and requirements of monitoring programmes designed to ensure
1297 compliance with regulatory requirements. Chapter 3 gives an overview of the
1298 biokinetic and dosimetric models used to calculate dose coefficients and bioassay
1299 data. It explains the changes made to the Publication 66 Human Respiratory Tract
1300 Model (HRTM) (ICRP, 1994a) and describes the main features of the Publication 100
1301 Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM) (ICRP, 2006). Chapter 3 also provides an
1302 introduction to the models used in this series of reports to describe the systemic
1303 biokinetics of elements and their radioisotopes. Dosimetric models and methodology
1304 are also explained.

1305 (48) Routes of intake other than inhalation and ingestion are not considered in this
1306 series of reports for the reasons discussed in Section 3.1. However, a summary of a
1307 biokinetic model for radionuclide contaminated wounds, prepared by the U.S.
1308 National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP, 2007), is
1309 included in Chapter 3.

1310 (49) A description of methods for individual monitoring is given in Chapter 4. The
1311 Chapter covers *in vivo* measurements and the analysis of excreta and other biological
1312 materials as well as workplace monitoring. The general principles for design of
1313 monitoring programmes, types of programmes and monitoring requirements are
1314 summarised in Chapter 5. Also covered briefly are wound monitoring and the
1315 potential effects of medical intervention. General aspects of retrospective dose
1316 assessment are considered in Chapter 6. The Chapter examines the need to understand
1317 the exposure situation and radionuclide(s) being handled as well as their physico-

1318 chemical form. It also stresses the need for any assessment to be proportionate to the
1319 expected exposure. It discusses the requirements for an effective monitoring
1320 programme and summarises approaches to data handling for single or multiple
1321 measurements. Uncertainties associated with the use of biokinetic models for the
1322 interpretation of the results of bioassay measurements are considered.

1323 (50) Chapter 7 provides a brief outline of the types of information included in
1324 subsequent parts of this series of reports: biokinetic data, dose coefficients and data
1325 for bioassay interpretation for individual elements and their radioisotopes. Each
1326 element section provides tables of dose coefficients (committed effective dose, Sv per
1327 Bq intake) for inhalation and ingestion of all relevant radioisotopes and tables of
1328 bioassay data, giving values of activity (Bq) retained in the body or specific organs, or
1329 excreted in urine or faeces, at various times after unit intake by inhalation or ingestion
1330 (*i.e.* 1 Bq). The bioassay data are also presented in graphical form. In addition tables
1331 are provided of committed effective dose (Sv) per unit activity measurements (Bq). In
1332 cases for which sufficient information is available (principally for actinide elements),
1333 lung absorption is specified for different chemical forms and dose coefficients and
1334 bioassay data are calculated accordingly.

1335 (51) The CD-ROMs that accompany this series of reports contain a comprehensive
1336 set of dose coefficients, dose per unit content (DPUC) values, and bioassay functions
1337 for a range of physico-chemical forms and aerosol AMADs. (The printed reports in
1338 this series contain data only for the 5 μm AMAD default). In addition to the data in
1339 the printed reports, the CD-ROMs provide values for activity retained in the body and
1340 daily excretion after unit intake, DPUC values, and reference bioassay functions
1341 tabulated at additional times after intake. The dose coefficients and other
1342 radionuclide-specific data are provided as a set of data files which may be accessed by
1343 the user directly or by using the accompanying Data Viewer. The Viewer permits
1344 rapid navigation of the dataset and visualisation of the data in tabulated and graphical
1345 formats, such as graphs of the time series of DPUC values or predicted activity
1346 content per unit dose (Bq Sv^{-1}) as a function of time after intake. Graphical
1347 presentations of decay chains and nuclear decay data from Publication 107 (ICRP,
1348 2008) are also included.

1349

1350
1351
1352

2 CONTROL OF OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES TO RADIONUCLIDES

1353

2.1 Limits, Constraints, Reference Levels and Investigation Levels

1354 (52) For occupational exposure to ionising radiation, the Commission continues to
1355 recommend that the primary annual limit relating to stochastic effects should be
1356 expressed as an effective dose of 20 mSv, averaged over defined 5 year periods (100
1357 mSv in 5 years), with the further provision that the annual effective dose should not
1358 exceed 50 mSv in any single year (ICRP, 2007). To prevent deterministic effects,
1359 there are additional annual limits on equivalent dose to the lens of the eye (20 mSv
1360 averaged over defined 5 year periods, with no single year exceeding 50 mSv), the skin
1361 (500 mSv), and the hands and feet (500 mSv), but these are generally not likely to be
1362 relevant in the context of intakes of radionuclides. Where workers may be exposed to
1363 both external radiation and intakes of radionuclides, the annual dose limit applies to
1364 the sum of the effective doses from external radiations and the committed effective
1365 dose from intakes of radionuclides occurring within the year.

1366 (53) In the 2007 Recommendations (ICRP, 2007), emphasis was placed on the use
1367 of dose constraints and reference levels. Dose constraints were included in the system
1368 of radiological protection given in Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991) and their use is
1369 developed further in the 2007 Recommendations. A dose constraint is a prospective
1370 and source related restriction on the individual dose from a source in planned
1371 exposure conditions (except in planned exposure of patients), which serves as an
1372 upper bound on the predicted dose in the optimisation of protection for that source. It
1373 is a level of dose above which it is unlikely that protection is optimised for a given
1374 source of exposure, and for which, therefore, action must almost always be taken.
1375 Dose constraints for planned situations represent a basic level of protection and will
1376 always be lower than the pertinent dose limit. During planning it must be ensured that
1377 the source concerned does not imply doses exceeding the dose constraint.
1378 Optimisation of protection will establish an acceptable level of dose below the
1379 constraint. This optimised level then becomes the expected outcome of the planned
1380 protective actions (ICRP, 2007). The Commission has emphasised that dose
1381 constraints are not to be used or understood as prescriptive regulatory limits.

1382 (54) In an emergency or existing controllable exposure situation, the reference
1383 levels are taken to represent the level of dose or risk above which it is judged to be
1384 inappropriate to plan to allow exposures to occur, and for which therefore protective
1385 actions should be planned and their extent be decided through optimisation. The
1386 chosen value for a reference level will depend upon the prevailing circumstances of
1387 the exposure situation under consideration (ICRP, 2007).

1388 (55) The Commission's constraints and reference levels apply across occupational,
1389 public and medical exposures (ICRP, 2007) and three defined bands are
1390 recommended. These are: ≤ 1 mSv; $>1 - \leq 20$ mSv and $>20-100$ mSv. Doses greater
1391 than 100 mSv are only considered in the context of life-saving actions. The first band,
1392 ≤ 1 mSv, applies to exposure situations where individuals receive exposures – usually

1393 planned – that may be of no direct benefit to them but the exposure situation may be
1394 of benefit to society. The exposure of members of the public as a result of the planned
1395 operation of practices is a prime example of this type of situation. The second band,
1396 from 1 mSv to 20 mSv, is of greatest relevance in the context of this report, applying
1397 in circumstances where individuals receive direct benefits from an exposure situation.
1398 Constraints and reference levels in this band will often be set in circumstances where
1399 there is individual surveillance or dose monitoring or assessment, and where
1400 individuals benefit from training or information. Examples are the constraints set for
1401 occupational exposure in planned exposure situations, or the reference levels for some
1402 protective actions in emergency exposure situations (ICRP, 2007). Exposure
1403 situations involving abnormally high levels of natural background radiation, or stages
1404 in post-accident rehabilitation may also be in this band. The third band, from 20 mSv
1405 to 100 mSv, applies in unusual, and often extreme, situations where actions taken to
1406 reduce exposures would be disruptive. Reference levels and, occasionally, constraints
1407 could also be set in this range in circumstances where benefits from the exposure
1408 situation are commensurately high. Action taken to reduce exposures in a radiological
1409 emergency is the main example of this type of situation.

1410 (56) The Commission considers that it will usually be appropriate for dose
1411 constraints to be fixed by an operator at the operational level or by expert bodies or
1412 regulatory authorities. The overall responsibility should be with those who are
1413 responsible for worker exposure.

1414 (57) As described in Publications 75 and 78 (ICRP, 1997a,b), investigation levels
1415 are set to trigger assessment of the conditions giving rise to the exposure. They are
1416 therefore used retrospectively. Investigation levels can be set for any operational
1417 parameter related to monitoring of individuals or of the working environment.
1418 Investigation levels set for individual radionuclides should take account of the
1419 presence of other radionuclides in the working environment.

1420 **2.2 Control of Worker Doses**

1421 (58) In occupational exposure, doses are often received from both external and
1422 internal radiation sources. For external exposure, individual monitoring is usually
1423 performed by measuring the personal dose equivalent using personal dosimeters and
1424 taking this measured value as an acceptable estimate of the value of effective dose.
1425 For internal exposure, committed effective dose values are determined from
1426 measurements of radionuclide activities in the body, in bioassay samples or in the
1427 workplace.

1428 (59) For practical purposes, the annual effective dose, E , can in most situations of
1429 occupational exposure be estimated as:

$$1430$$
$$1431 \quad E \cong H_p(10) + E(50)$$

1432

1433 where $H_p(10)$ is the personal dose equivalent from external exposure, normally
1434 defined by the dose equivalent at a depth of 10 mm in the body below the

1435 position where the dosimeter is worn, and $E(50)$ is the committed effective
 1436 dose from internal exposure as assessed by:

1437
 1438
$$E(50) = \sum_j e_{j,\text{inh}}(50) \cdot I_{j,\text{inh}} + \sum_j e_{j,\text{ing}}(50) \cdot I_{j,\text{ing}}$$

1439
 1440 where $e_j(50)$ is the dose coefficient (committed effective dose per unit intake,
 1441 Sv Bq⁻¹) of a radionuclide, integrated over 50 years after intake by inhalation
 1442 (inh) and/or ingestion (ing). The intakes, I_j (Bq), may be for one or a number of
 1443 radionuclides.

1444
 1445 (60) The dose coefficient for intakes of radionuclides is the fundamental quantity
 1446 recommended by ICRP for protection purposes. The Annual Limit on Intake (*ALI*)
 1447 and the Derived Air Concentration (*DAC*) are derived parameters that can be useful in
 1448 the control of exposures.

1449 (61) The *ALI* was defined in Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991, paragraph S30) as an
 1450 intake (in Bq) of a radionuclide in a year which would lead to a committed effective
 1451 dose of 20 mSv (0.02 Sv). The average annual limit on intake for workers would thus
 1452 be:

1453
 1454
$$ALI_j = \frac{0.02}{e_j(50)}$$

1455
 1456 (62) The *DAC* is the activity concentration in air (in Bq m⁻³) of the radionuclide
 1457 considered which would lead to an intake of an *ALI* assuming a sex-averaged
 1458 breathing rate of 1.1 m³ h⁻¹ and an annual working time of 2000 h. Then the *DAC* is
 1459 given by:

1460
 1461
$$DAC_j = \frac{ALI_j}{2200}$$

1462
 1463 (63) ICRP does not now give *ALI* values because it considers that for compliance
 1464 with dose limits it is the total dose from external radiation as well as from intakes of
 1465 radionuclides that must be taken into account, as indicated above. It is, however,
 1466 noted that the *ALI* concept can be useful in various practical situations, characterising
 1467 the relative hazard of radiation sources to ensure that appropriate administrative
 1468 controls are in place. *ALI* values can be easily calculated using the equations given in
 1469 the previous paragraphs.

1470 **2.3 Objectives of Monitoring**

1471 (64) The purpose of monitoring for internal exposure to radionuclides is to verify
 1472 and document that the worker is protected adequately against radiological risks, and
 1473 that the protection afforded complies with legal requirements. Two types of
 1474 monitoring of internal exposures of workers can be identified: *workplace monitoring*
 1475 and *individual monitoring*.

1476 (65) Workplace monitoring of internal exposures makes use of measurements
1477 made in the working environment. An example is the measurement of radionuclide
1478 concentration(s) in air using static air samplers. In general, workplace monitoring
1479 complements individual monitoring. It may be used for monitoring internal exposures
1480 in place of individual monitoring when the latter is not justified, or where the
1481 sensitivity of individual monitoring is inadequate. It can be used to provide an
1482 assessment of exposure for groups of workers, but this requires assumptions to be
1483 made about exposure conditions. It is also of value in demonstrating that working
1484 conditions meet safe working criteria and have not changed. It can indicate the release
1485 of radionuclides into the working environment and so trigger subsequent individual
1486 monitoring measurements.

1487 (66) Individual monitoring of internal exposure uses measurements made for
1488 individual workers for the assessment of their *dose of record*, together with other
1489 dosimetric quantities if required. The principal objectives of individual monitoring in
1490 planned and existing situations are:

- 1491 • to assess the worker's dose of record and to demonstrate compliance with
1492 regulatory requirements.
- 1493 • to contribute to the safety management and control of the operation of the
1494 facility.

1495 (67) The principal objectives of individual monitoring of workers in emergency
1496 situations are:

- 1497 • to document the worker's exposure in terms of dose of record and, if
1498 appropriate, in terms of absorbed doses in significantly exposed tissues.
- 1499 • to provide information for the initiation and support of any appropriate health
1500 surveillance and treatment.

1501 (68) Usually it is necessary to carry out only a simple assessment of dose to
1502 demonstrate compliance with regulatory requirements when annual doses are
1503 expected to be only small fractions of the dose limits. In some countries it may be
1504 unnecessary to make an assessment of individual dose, the measured value being
1505 compared with an appropriate threshold or recording level. At higher doses more
1506 emphasis will need to be placed upon specific dose assessments and the
1507 circumstances of any exposure.

1508 (69) Measurements, together with information about the workplace, should enable
1509 each radionuclide to be identified, its activity quantified, and the measurement result
1510 interpreted in terms of intake and/or committed effective dose. There may be some
1511 circumstances where individual monitoring techniques are not adequate to assess
1512 doses and it may be necessary to combine individual and workplace monitoring
1513 techniques.

1514 **2.4 Categories of Individual Monitoring Programme**

1515 (70) Routine monitoring is performed under conditions of essentially continuous
1516 risk of contamination of the workplace as a result of normal operations, or where
1517 undetected accidental intakes may occur. Measurements in a routine monitoring
1518 programme are made at pre-determined times not related to known intakes, and

1519 therefore it is necessary to make some assumptions about the pattern of intakes.
1520 National or local legislation or regulations may also set the requirements for
1521 systematic routine monitoring that may be needed if exposures could exceed a
1522 specified fraction of the dose limit or a dose constraint.

1523 (71) Other monitoring programmes may be conducted in relation to a particular
1524 task, or to determine intakes in actual or suspected abnormal conditions. In these
1525 circumstances, the time of intake, or potential intake, is likely to be known and
1526 workplace monitoring programmes may provide some information on the physical
1527 and chemical nature of any contamination. Special monitoring is performed to
1528 quantify significant exposures following actual or suspected abnormal events.
1529 Confirmatory monitoring is performed where there is a need to check assumptions
1530 made about exposure conditions, for example in order to confirm the effectiveness of
1531 protection measures. Task-related monitoring is carried out for workers engaged on
1532 specific operations.

1533 **2.5 Needs for Individual Monitoring**

1534 (72) An important function of an employer and/or licensee is that of maintaining
1535 control over sources of exposure and ensuring the protection of workers who are
1536 occupationally exposed. In order to achieve this, the Commission continues to
1537 recommend the classification of controlled and supervised areas (ICRP, 2007). A
1538 controlled area requires consideration of specific protection measures and safety
1539 provisions for controlling normal exposures or preventing the spread of contamination
1540 during normal operations, and preventing or limiting the extent of accidental
1541 exposures. A supervised area is one in which the radiological conditions are kept
1542 under review but special procedures are not normally needed.

1543 (73) It is necessary to identify groups of workers for whom individual monitoring
1544 is needed. The decision to provide individual monitoring depends on many factors.
1545 Routine individual monitoring for intakes of radioactive material should be used for
1546 workers in areas that are designated as controlled areas specifically in relation to the
1547 control of contamination and in which significant intakes cannot be excluded.

1548 (74) Workers in controlled areas are the group who are most often monitored for
1549 radiation exposures incurred in the workplace, and may also receive special medical
1550 surveillance. They should be well informed and specially trained, and form a readily
1551 identifiable group.

1552 (75) The use of individual monitoring for workers whose annual doses could
1553 exceed 1 mSv is common practice in many organisations although it may not be
1554 required by legislation. Regulatory, technical and managerial considerations may
1555 support arguments for the assessment of individual dose at these lower levels, at least
1556 for those radionuclides for which assessment is straightforward and practical.

1557 (76) The following examples indicate the type of operations where experience has
1558 shown that it is necessary to give consideration to routine individual monitoring for
1559 internal exposure of workers:

- 1560 • the handling of large quantities of gaseous and volatile materials, *e.g.* tritium
1561 and its compounds in large scale production processes, in heavy water reactors
1562 and in luminising;

- 1563 • maintenance of reactor facilities;
 - 1564 • handling of radioactive waste, for example from nuclear facilities and
 - 1565 hospitals;
 - 1566 • the processing of plutonium and other transuranic elements;
 - 1567 • the processing of thorium ores and the use of thorium and its compounds
 - 1568 (these activities can lead to internal exposure from both radioactive dusts and
 - 1569 thoron [^{220}Rn] and its progeny);
 - 1570 • the mining, milling and refining of uranium ores;
 - 1571 • natural and enriched uranium processing and fuel fabrication;
 - 1572 • work with large quantities of naturally occurring radioactive materials
 - 1573 (NORM);
 - 1574 • the production of radiopharmaceuticals;
 - 1575 • the handling of large quantities of ^{131}I for medical applications.
- 1576 (77) The results of monitoring of the workplace may also indicate a need for a
1577 temporary programme of special individual monitoring aimed at identifying any need
1578 for a routine programme of workplace monitoring.

1579 **2.6 Female Workers: pregnancy and breast-feeding**

1580 (78) It is the Commission's policy (ICRP, 2007) that the methods of protection at
1581 work for women who are pregnant should provide a level of protection for the
1582 embryo/fetus broadly similar to that provided for members of the public. The
1583 Commission considers that this policy will be adequately applied if the mother is
1584 exposed, prior to her declaration of pregnancy, under the system of protection
1585 recommended by the Commission. Once pregnancy has been declared, and the
1586 employer notified, additional protection of the embryo/fetus should be considered.
1587 The working conditions of a pregnant worker, after declaration of pregnancy, should
1588 be such as to make it unlikely that the additional external dose to the fetus, together
1589 with the committed effective dose to the fetus and newborn child from intakes of
1590 radionuclides before or during the pregnancy, would exceed about 1 mSv.

1591 (79) ICRP has provided information in Publications 88 and 95 (ICRP, 2001, 2004)
1592 on doses to the embryo, fetus and newborn child following intake of radionuclides by
1593 female workers either before or during pregnancy or during lactation. Comparisons of
1594 fetal dose coefficients given in Publication 88 with corresponding adult dose
1595 coefficients showed that doses received by a woman from intakes before or during
1596 pregnancy will in most cases be substantially greater than doses to her fetus.
1597 However, doses to the offspring can exceed doses to the mother for a number of
1598 radionuclides. In particular, the requirements of skeletal development during fetal
1599 growth, particularly in late pregnancy, can lead to significant uptake of radioisotopes
1600 of phosphorus and of calcium and, to a lesser extent, other alkaline earth elements.
1601 Thus, offspring:adult dose ratios were up to factors of about 10 – 20 for isotopes of P
1602 and Ca and 2 – 6 for isotopes of Sr (Stather *et al*, 2003; ICRP 2004). Uptake of
1603 radioisotopes of iodine by the fetal thyroid can also lead to greater doses to the fetus
1604 than to the mother following intakes late in pregnancy (dose ratios of up to about 3)
1605 (Berkovski *et al*, 2003b). Other radionuclides for which doses to the fetus can exceed

1606 doses to the mother include tritium as tritiated water, ^{14}C and ^{35}S . Offspring:adult
1607 dose ratios are greatest following ingestion or inhalation of soluble (Type F) forms.
1608 Values of offspring:adult ratios may change as a result of future calculations
1609 following from Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) and associated changes. Offspring
1610 doses may also be of concern when the dose ratio is <1 since a dose of 1 mSv might
1611 be reached at otherwise acceptable levels of occupational dose (Phipps *et al*, 2001).

1612 (80) When a worker has declared pregnancy, possible doses to her child will be
1613 taken into account in measures taken to limit exposures. Thus, offspring doses
1614 resulting from intakes later in pregnancy may in practice be of less importance than
1615 doses resulting from intakes before the declaration of pregnancy. A number of
1616 radionuclides of potential significance in this category have been identified, including
1617 ^{63}Ni and ^{55}Fe (Phipps *et al*, 2001; Nosske and Karcher, 2003).

1618 (81) In general, doses to the infant from radionuclides ingested in breast-milk are
1619 estimated to be small in comparison with doses to the reference adult (ICRP, 2004).
1620 On the basis of the models developed in Publication 95 (ICRP, 2004), it is only in the
1621 cases of tritiated water, ^{45}Ca , ^{75}Se and ^{131}I that infant doses may exceed adult doses,
1622 by factors of between 1 and 3. Infant doses are highest when maternal intakes by
1623 ingestion occur shortly after birth because maximum transfer occurs under these
1624 conditions. Ratios of infant to adult doses are generally lower for intakes by inhalation
1625 than for ingestion. Comparisons with Publication 88 (ICRP, 2001) doses to the
1626 offspring due to *in utero* exposures show that in most cases these are more important
1627 than doses that may result from breast feeding; exceptions include ^{60}Co , ^{131}I and
1628 ^{210}Po .

1629

1630

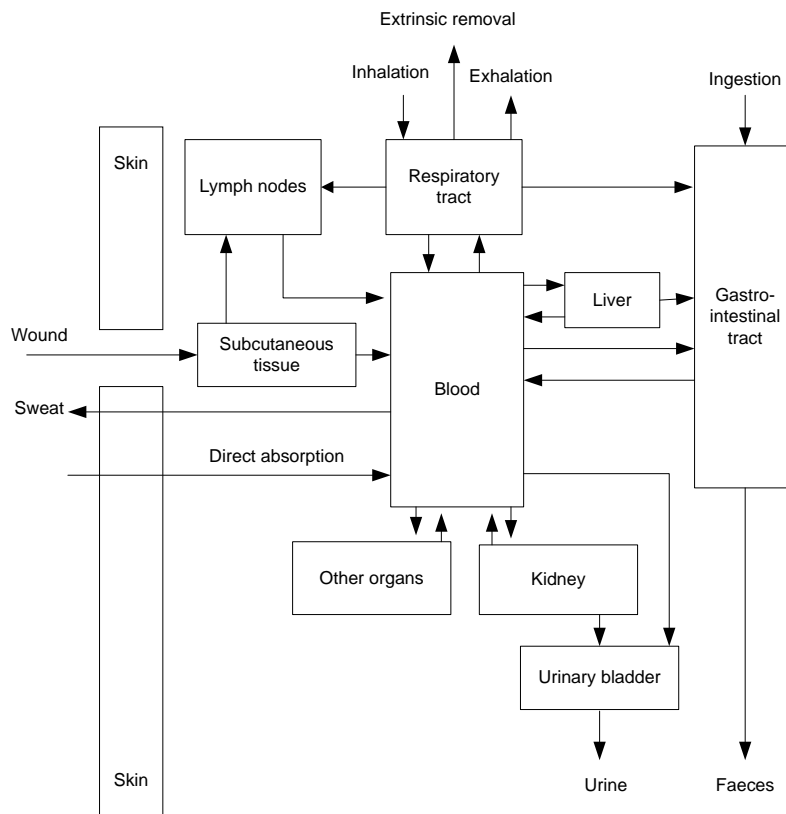
3 **BIOKINETIC AND DOSIMETRIC MODELS**

1631

3.1 Introduction

1632 (82) This chapter gives an overview of the biokinetic and dosimetric models used
 1633 to calculate dose coefficients and bioassay data. It explains the changes made here to
 1634 the Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM) (ICRP, 1994a) and describes the main
 1635 features of the Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM) (ICRP, 2006). It also
 1636 provides an introduction to the models used in this series of reports to describe the
 1637 systemic biokinetics of elements and their radioisotopes. Dosimetric models and
 1638 methodology are also explained.

1639 (83) Radionuclide exposures in the workplace can lead to intakes by a number of
 1640 routes: inhalation, ingestion, entry through intact skin and wounds. Figure 2
 1641 summarises the routes of intake, internal transfers, and routes of excretion.



1642

(84)

1643

1644

Figure 2. Summary of the main routes of intake, transfer and excretion of radionuclides in the body

1645

1646

1647

1648

1649

1650

(85) For inhalation, the HRTM (ICRP, 1994a) was applied in Publication 68 (ICRP, 1994b) and in subsequent publications on dose coefficients (ICRP, 1995c, 1996). For these implementations of the HRTM, chemical forms of radionuclides that

1651 had been assigned to Publication 30 inhalation Classes D, W, and Y were assigned to
1652 HRTM absorption Types F, M, and S respectively. In the element sections of this
1653 series of reports, information is reviewed on the lung clearance characteristics of
1654 different chemical forms of each element, within the framework of the HRTM. The
1655 opportunity has been taken to update some aspects of the HRTM in the light of
1656 information that has become available since Publication 66 was issued, as
1657 summarised in Section 1.5.2 above, and described in Section 3.2 below.

1658 (86) For ingestion of radionuclides, the HATM (ICRP, 2006) is applied. The
1659 model is also used for radionuclides in particles cleared to the throat from the
1660 respiratory tract after inhalation. In the HATM, fractional absorption of radionuclides
1661 is specified by the alimentary tract transfer factor, f_A , instead of the f_1 value as given
1662 for the gastrointestinal tract (GIT) model described in Publication 30 (ICRP, 1979).
1663 The f_A value describes total absorption from all regions of the alimentary tract,
1664 although the default assumption is that all absorption takes place in the small
1665 intestine.

1666 (87) ICRP has generally not given advice on assessing doses from intakes of
1667 radionuclides transferred from wound sites to blood and other organs and tissues.
1668 Internal exposure resulting from wounds almost always arises because of accidents in
1669 the workplace, rather than as a result of routine operations that are subject to the
1670 normal environmental controls. Uptake from wounds can vary greatly depending on
1671 the circumstances of a particular incident and in practice the assessment of internal
1672 contamination is treated on a case-by-case basis. As a result, provision of generic dose
1673 coefficients or bioassay data would be of limited value. Information on the transfer of
1674 radionuclides from wound sites has, however, been reviewed by a Scientific
1675 Committee of NCRP and these data have been used to develop a model to describe
1676 the transfer of material from wounds after intakes in different physico-chemical forms
1677 (NCRP, 2007). Section 3.4 summarises the main features of the NCRP model, since
1678 this information may be of use in the prospective assessment of doses and the
1679 interpretation of bioassay data for individual cases of wound contamination.

1680 (88) For each route of intake, a proportion of the radionuclide entering the body is
1681 absorbed to blood and distributed systemically. The systemic distribution of
1682 radionuclides in the body can be diffuse and relatively homogeneous, as for the
1683 examples of tritiated water and radioisotopes of potassium and caesium, or may be
1684 localised in certain organs or tissues, as for the examples of radioisotopes of iodine
1685 (thyroid), alkaline earth elements (bone), and plutonium (bone and liver). Systemic
1686 biokinetic models are used to describe the distribution and excretion of radionuclides
1687 absorbed to blood. The systemic models for the elements have been reviewed and
1688 revised as necessary to take account of more recent information and provide models
1689 that are appropriate for both dosimetry and bioassay interpretation.

1690 (89) Removal of deposited material from the body occurs principally by urinary
1691 and faecal excretion although radionuclides may also be lost by exhalation or through
1692 the skin (*e.g.* tritiated water (HTO)). Urinary excretion is the removal in urine of
1693 radionuclides from blood following filtration by the kidneys. Faecal excretion has two
1694 components: systemic (endogenous) faecal excretion which represents removal of
1695 systemic material via the alimentary tract, due to biliary secretion from the liver and
1696 secretions at other sites along the alimentary tract; and direct (exogenous) faecal

1697 excretion, strictly elimination, of the material passing unabsorbed through the
1698 alimentary tract after ingestion or clearance to the throat from the respiratory system
1699 after inhalation.

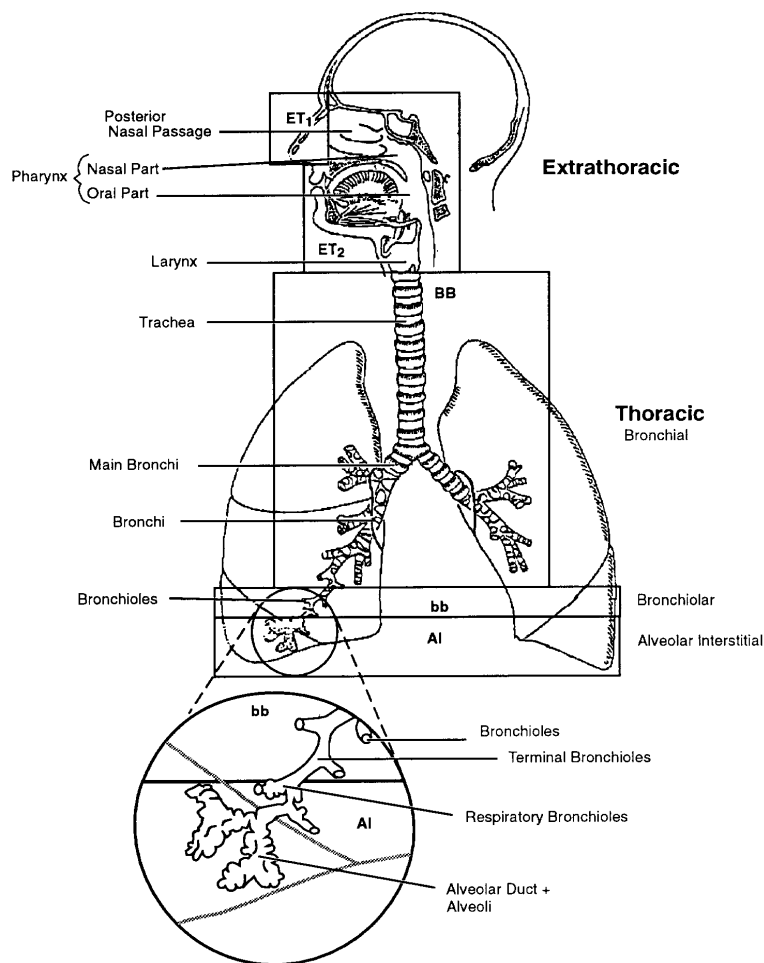
1700 (90) The reference models outlined in this Chapter are assigned reference
1701 parameter values and used to calculate body or organ content and daily urinary or
1702 faecal excretion at specified times after acute or chronic intake. They are used to
1703 calculate reference bioassay functions and, together with dosimetric data, reference
1704 dose coefficients.

1705 **3.2 Revised Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM)**

1706 (91) The Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM) described in Publication 66
1707 (ICRP, 1994a) was applied to calculate inhalation dose coefficients for workers and
1708 members of the public in Publications 68, 71 and 72 (ICRP, 1994b, 1995c, 1996), and
1709 bioassay functions in Publication 78 (ICRP, 1997b). A revised version of the HRTM
1710 is used in this series of reports and is described below.

1711 (92) As in the original version of the HRTM, the respiratory tract is treated as two
1712 tissues: the extrathoracic regions (ET) and the thoracic regions (TH). The sub-division
1713 of these tissues into regions was based mainly on differences in sensitivity to
1714 radiation. The thoracic regions are bronchial, (BB: trachea, generation 0, and bronchi,
1715 airway generations 1 – 8), bronchiolar (bb: airway generations 9 – 15), alveolar-
1716 interstitial (AI: the gas exchange region, airway generations 16 and beyond); and the
1717 thoracic lymph nodes, LN_{TH}. The extrathoracic regions are the anterior nasal passage,
1718 ET₁; the posterior nasal passages, pharynx and larynx, ET₂; and the extrathoracic
1719 lymph nodes LN_{ET} (Figure 3). For consistency with the HATM, the oral passage is not
1720 now included in region ET₂ as it was in Publication 66. This does not affect results
1721 obtained with the model, because deposition in ET from air entering the mouth was
1722 taken to occur only in the larynx.

1723



1724

1725

1726 Figure 3. Respiratory tract regions defined in the Human Respiratory Tract Model (HRTM).

1727 Note that the oral part of the pharynx is no longer part of ET₂.

1728

1729

1730

3.2.1 Deposition

1731

Aerosols of (solid or liquid) particulate materials

1732

1733

1734

1735

1736

1737

1738

1739

1740

1741

1742

(93) The deposition model described in Publication 66 (ICRP, 1994a) evaluates fractional deposition of an aerosol in each region, for all aerosol sizes of practical interest (0.6 nm – 100 μm). For the ET regions, measured deposition efficiencies were related to characteristic parameters of particle size and airflow, and were scaled by anatomical dimensions to predict deposition under other conditions (*e.g.* sex, ethnic group). For the thoracic airways, a theoretical model of gas transport and particle deposition was used to calculate particle deposition in each of the BB, bb, and AI regions, and to quantify the effects of the subject's lung size and breathing rate. To model particle deposition, the regions were treated as a series of filters, during both inhalation and exhalation. The efficiency of each was evaluated by considering aerodynamic (gravitational settling, inertial impaction) and thermodynamic

1743 (diffusion) processes acting competitively. Regional deposition fractions were
1744 calculated for aerosols having lognormal particle size distributions, with geometric
1745 standard deviations taken to be a function of the median particle diameter, increasing
1746 from a value of 1.0 at 0.6 μm to a value of 2.5 above about 1 μm .

1747 (94) No changes are made here to the Publication 66 implementation of the
1748 deposition model for aerosols, except for the distribution of the deposit in the ET
1749 airways between regions ET_1 and ET_2 . In Publication 66 (ICRP, 1994a) it was
1750 assessed, on the basis of the available information, that deposition in ET_1 is somewhat
1751 higher than in ET_2 during inhalation through the nose, and that most of the particles
1752 deposited in ET_1 are cleared by nose-blowing, but some clear to ET_2 and hence to the
1753 alimentary tract on a time scale of hours. However, because of the lack of quantitative
1754 information, these judgements were applied in a simplified form in the original
1755 HRTM. It was assumed that particles deposited in the nasal passage during inhalation
1756 are partitioned equally between ET_1 and the posterior nasal passage, which is part of
1757 ET_2 . (However, because of the way the deposition efficiencies were calculated for
1758 polydisperse aerosols during inhalation and exhalation, for most aerosol sizes of
1759 interest in radiation protection the deposition fractions given in Publication 66 are
1760 somewhat higher for ET_2 than for ET_1 .) As described in the section below on particle
1761 transport from the ET airways, recent experimental studies (Smith *et al*, 2011) enable
1762 a more accurate representation of ET deposition and clearance to be implemented
1763 here. Results for a group of subjects indicated that the distribution of the deposit in
1764 the ET airways can be characterised by mean deposition fractions of 65% to ET_1 and
1765 35% to ET_2 . To calculate the fractions of inhaled material deposited in ET_1 and ET_2 ,
1766 the fractions deposited in ET_1 and ET_2 (calculated using the original HRTM) were
1767 summed to give the total deposit in the ET airways, and then re-partitioned 65% to
1768 ET_1 and 35% to ET_2 . (For mouth breathing there is no deposition in ET_1 and the
1769 fraction deposited in ET_2 remains as calculated using the original HRTM.)

1770 (95) For inhalation of radionuclides by workers, the reference subjects are taken to
1771 be normal nose-breathing adult males and females at light work. However, for
1772 simplicity, deposition in (and clearance from) the respiratory tract are calculated for
1773 the reference adult male only. For occupational exposure, the default value
1774 recommended for the Activity Median Aerodynamic Diameter (AMAD) is 5 μm
1775 (ICRP, 1994b), consistent with the review of data by Dorrian and Bailey (1995) and
1776 Ansoborlo *et al* (1997). Fractional deposition in each region of the respiratory tract of
1777 the reference worker is given in Table 3 for aerosols of 5 μm AMAD.

1778

1779 Table 3 Regional deposition of inhaled 5 µm AMAD aerosols in Reference Workers engaged
 1780 in light work (% of inhaled activity)

Region	Deposition (%) ^{a,b,c}
	Male
ET ₁	47.94
ET ₂	25.82
BB	1.78
bb	1.10
AI	5.32
Total	81.96

1781

1782 ^aReference values are given to a greater degree of precision than would be chosen to reflect
 1783 the certainty with which the average value of each parameter is known.

1784

1785 ^bThe particles are assumed to have density 3.00 g cm⁻³, and shape factor 1.5. The particle
 1786 aerodynamic diameters are assumed to be log-normally distributed with geometric standard
 1787 deviation, σ_g of approximately 2.50. (The value of σ_g is not a reference value, but is derived
 1788 from the corresponding Activity Median Thermodynamic Diameter, AMTD (ICRP, 1994a)).

1789

1790 ^cLight work is defined on the following basis: 2.5 h sitting, at which the amount inhaled is
 1791 0.54 m³ h⁻¹; and 5.5 h light exercise, at which the amount inhaled is 1.5 m³ h⁻¹. For both
 1792 levels of activity all the inhaled air enters through the nose. The deposition fractions are
 1793 therefore volume-weighted average values for the two levels of activity given for normal
 1794 nose-breathing adult males sitting and at light exercise in Publication 66, Annex F (ICRP,
 1795 1994a). However, as described in the text, the fractions deposited in ET₁ and ET₂ from
 1796 Publication 66 were summed to give the total deposit in the ET airways, and partitioned 65%
 1797 to ET₁ and 35% to ET₂.

1798

1799 ***Gases and Vapours***

1800 (96) For radionuclides inhaled as aerosols, the HRTM assumes that total and
 1801 regional deposits in the respiratory tract are determined only by the size distribution of
 1802 the inhaled particles. The situation is different for gases and vapours, for which
 1803 deposition in the respiratory tract depends entirely on the chemical form. In this
 1804 context, *deposition* refers to how much of the material in the inhaled air remains in
 1805 the body after exhalation. Almost all inhaled gas molecules contact airway surfaces,
 1806 but usually return to the air unless they dissolve in, or react with, the surface lining.
 1807 The fraction of an inhaled gas or vapour that is deposited in each region thus depends
 1808 on its solubility and reactivity.

1809 (97) As for particulate forms of radionuclides, default parameter values are
 1810 provided for use in the absence of more specific information. The general defaults for
 1811 gases and vapours are 100% total deposition in the respiratory tract (regional
 1812 deposition: 20% ET₂, 10% BB, 20% bb and 50% AI) with Type F absorption (Section
 1813 3.2.3). This classification is somewhat different from that recommended in
 1814 Publication 66, but simpler to apply. In particular, it is assumed by default that there
 1815 is no deposition in ET₁. The SR-0, -1, -2, classification described in Publication 66
 1816 was not found to be helpful and is not used here.

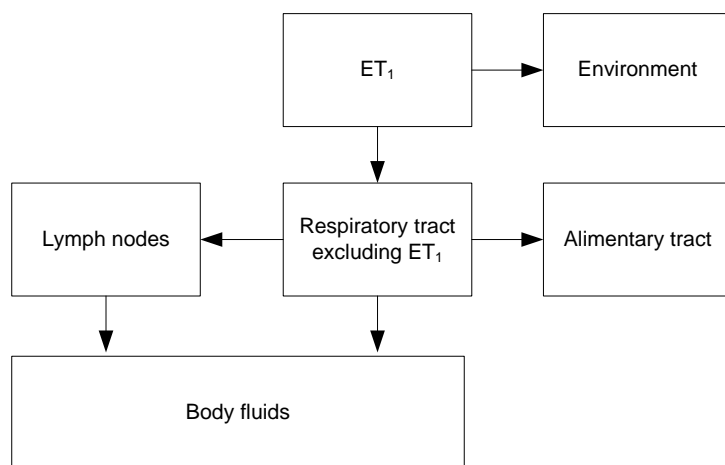
1817 (98) In this series of reports, parameter values are adopted for gaseous and vapour
 1818 forms of compounds of a number of elements, including hydrogen, carbon, sulphur
 1819 and iodine. In each case, values are given for total deposition, regional deposition and
 1820 absorption.

1821

1822 **3.2.2 Clearance: particle transport**

1823 (99) The model describes several routes of clearance from the respiratory tract
 1824 (Figure 4). Some material deposited in ET_1 is removed by extrinsic means such as
 1825 nose-blowing. In other regions, clearance is competitive between the movement of
 1826 particles towards the alimentary tract and lymph nodes (particle transport), and the
 1827 absorption into blood of material from the particles in the respiratory tract. Removal
 1828 rates due to particle transport and absorption to blood are taken to be independent. It
 1829 is assumed that all clearance rates are independent of age and sex.

1830



1831

1832

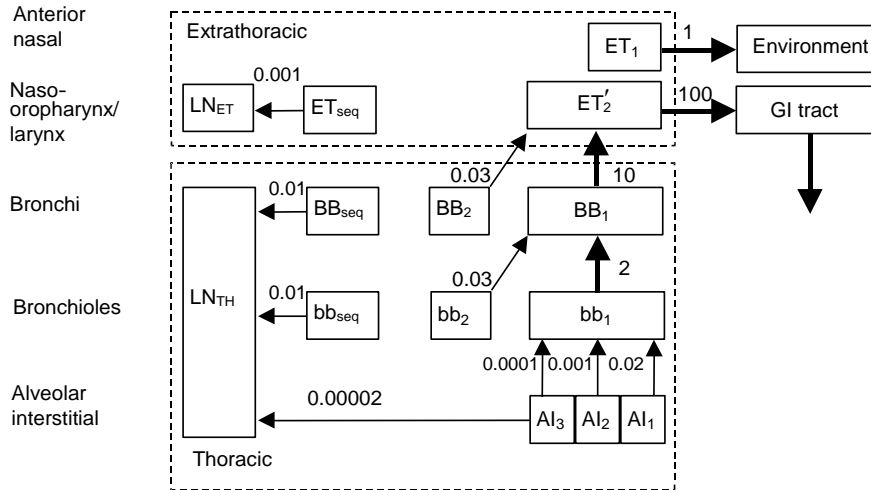
1833 Figure 4. Routes of clearance from the respiratory tract

1834

1835 (100) As in the original HRTM, it is assumed that particle transport rates are the
 1836 same for all materials. A generic compartment model is therefore provided to describe
 1837 particle transport of all materials. The original model is shown in Figure 5. Reference
 1838 values of rate constants were derived, as far as possible, from human studies, since
 1839 particle transport rates are known to vary greatly among mammalian species. Figure 5
 1840 as it stands would describe the retention and clearance of an insoluble material.
 1841 However, as noted above, there is in general simultaneous absorption to blood. New
 1842 studies enable more reliable particle transport parameter values to be chosen for the
 1843 extrathoracic regions (ET); bronchial (BB); bronchiolar (bb) and alveolar-interstitial
 1844 (AI) regions, than was possible when Publication 66 was issued in 1994.

1845 (101) The revised particle transport model adopted here is shown in Figure 6.
 1846 Region ET_2 is described in the model by two compartments, ET_{seq} and ET'_2 . Because
 1847 the oral passage is no longer included in Region ET_2 (see above), compartment ET'_2
 1848 is redefined as consisting of the posterior nasal passage, pharynx and larynx. The
 1849 compartments used to represent the retention of particles deposited in the BB and bb
 1850 regions that are cleared slowly (compartments BB_2 and bb_2 in Figure 5) are no longer

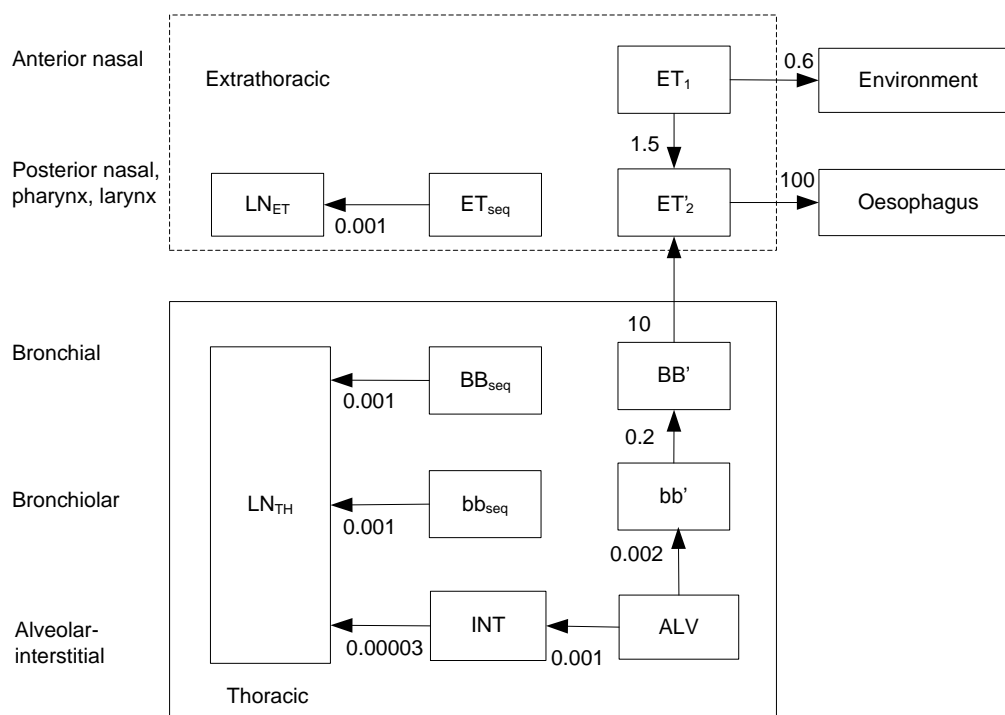
1851 included, and bronchial and bronchiolar retention is represented by the BB' and bb'
 1852 compartments, respectively. The three AI compartments of the original HRTM have
 1853 been replaced by the ALV compartment, from which particles either clear to the
 1854 ciliated airways or penetrate to the interstitium (the INT compartment). Particles clear
 1855 very slowly from the INT compartment to the lymph nodes.
 1856



1857
 1858
 1859
 1860
 1861
 1862
 1863
 1864
 1865
 1866
 1867

Figure 5. Compartment model representing time-dependent particle transport from each respiratory tract region in the original HRTM. Rates shown alongside arrows are reference values in units of d^{-1} . It was assumed that: (i) the AI deposit is divided between AI₁, AI₂ and AI₃ in the ratio 0.3:0.6:0.1; (ii) the fraction of the deposit in BB and bb that is cleared slowly (BB₂ and bb₂) is 50% for particles of physical size $<2.5 \mu m$ and decreases with diameter $>2.5 \mu m$, and the fraction retained in the airway wall (BB_{seq} and bb_{seq}) is 0.7% at all sizes; (iii) 0.05% of material deposited in region ET₂ is retained in its wall (ET_{seq}) and the rest in compartment ET₂' which clears rapidly to the GI tract.

1868



1869

1870

1871

1872

1873

1874

1875

1876

Figure 6. Revised compartment model representing time-dependent particle transport from each respiratory tract region. Rates shown alongside arrows are reference values in units of d^{-1} . It is assumed that 0.2% of material deposited in regions ET_2 , BB and bb is retained in the airway wall (ET_{seq} , BB_{seq} and bb_{seq} respectively).

Particle transport: extrathoracic airways

1877

1878

1879

1880

1881

1882

1883

1884

1885

1886

1887

1888

1889

1890

1891

1892

1893

1894

(102) The Publication 66 model assumed that of material deposited in the ET airways, about 50% deposits in ET_1 (Figure 5), which is cleared by nose blowing at a rate of $1 d^{-1}$, and the rest deposits in ET_2 , which clears to the GI tract at a rate of $100 d^{-1}$. However, there was little information available to quantify clearance from ET_1 . It was recognised that the fraction deposited in ET_1 was generally greater than that in ET_2 and that there was slow transfer from ET_1 to ET_2 , but insufficient information was available to quantify these factors and transfer rates. In experiments intended to address this deficiency, subjects inhaled 1.5-, 3- or 6- μm aerodynamic diameter (d_{ae}) radiolabelled insoluble particles through the nose while sitting at rest or performing light exercise (Smith *et al*, 2002, 2011). Retention in the nasal airways and clearance by voluntary nose blowing were followed until at least 95% of the initial ET deposit (IETD) had cleared (typically about 2 days). On average, 19% IETD was cleared by nose blowing (geometric mean time for 50% clearance was 8 hours), and the rest was cleared to the alimentary tract: 15% within a few minutes, 21% between a few minutes and an hour, and 45% on a similar time-scale to the fraction cleared by nose-blowing. Measurements in this study, and the previous studies on which the original model was based, indicate that most particles that have not cleared within an hour are retained in the anterior nasal passage.

1895 (103) On the basis of these data, it is assumed here that material deposited in ET_1
1896 (now taken to be 65% of the deposit in ET, as described in Section 3.2.1) is cleared at
1897 a rate of 2.1 d^{-1} (half-time about 8 hours): about one-third, by nose blowing and two-
1898 thirds by transfer to ET_2 . This is implemented with particle transport rates of 0.6 d^{-1}
1899 from ET_1 to the Environment and 1.5 d^{-1} from ET_1 to ET_2' . Clearance from ET_2' is
1900 unchanged, with a rate to the alimentary tract of 100 d^{-1} (half-time about 10 minutes).
1901 As in the original HRTM, a small fraction of particles deposited in ET_2 (but not
1902 cleared to it from ET_1) is sequestered in the airway wall (ET_{seq}) and transferred to
1903 lymph nodes. However, the fraction sequestered is increased from 0.05% of the
1904 deposit in ET_2 in the original HRTM, to 0.2% here, partly because of the smaller
1905 fractional deposition in ET_2 , but also from reconsideration of the experimental data
1906 relating to long-term retention of inhaled particles in the nasal passages, which were
1907 reviewed in Publication 66.

1908 (104) The changes from the original HRTM treatment of ET will in many cases
1909 increase dose coefficients because of the transfer from ET_1 to ET_2 and hence greater
1910 systemic uptake in ET_2 and the alimentary tract. The changes will also affect
1911 interpretation of measurements of radionuclides in faecal samples: a larger fraction of
1912 the material deposited in the nose (which is typically about 50% of the material
1913 inhaled) is cleared through the alimentary tract.

1914

1915 ***Particle transport: bronchial and bronchiolar airways***

1916 *Slow clearance*

1917 (105) The original HRTM includes a slow phase of clearance of particles deposited
1918 in the BB and bb regions (compartments BB_2 and bb_2 in Figure 5), with a half-time of
1919 23 days. It was based mainly on the results of experiments in which volunteers
1920 inhaled a 'shallow bolus' of radio-labelled particles *i.e.*, a small volume of aerosol at
1921 the end of each breath, designed to deposit particles in the major airways. A 'slow-
1922 cleared' fraction was observed, which was considered to show a better correlation
1923 with particle geometric diameter, d_p than with d_{ae} (ICRP, 1994a). The original HRTM
1924 assumes that the slow-cleared fraction of particles deposited in BB and in bb (f_s) is 0.5
1925 for $d_p \leq 2.5 \mu\text{m}$, and decreases exponentially for larger particles.

1926 (106) In the revised HRTM, a different approach has been taken to slow clearance
1927 from the bronchial tree based on more recent human volunteer experiments. In
1928 particular, in a series of studies, large particles ($6\text{-}\mu\text{m } d_{ae}$) were inhaled extremely
1929 slowly, which theoretically should result in most deposition occurring in the
1930 bronchioles (*e.g.* Anderson *et al*, 1995; Camner *et al*, 1997; Falk *et al*, 1997, 1999;
1931 Philipson *et al*, 2000; Svartengren *et al*, 2001). Retention at 24 hours was much
1932 greater than the predicted AI deposition, supporting the concept of slow clearance in
1933 the bronchial tree.

1934 (107) Falk *et al* (1997, 1999) compared lung retention of $6 \mu\text{m } d_{ae}$ Teflon particles
1935 inhaled slowly ($\sim 45 \text{ cm}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$) with retention of similar particles inhaled at a normal
1936 flow-rate ($\sim 450 \text{ cm}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$) for up to 6 months. About 50% of the initial lung deposit
1937 (ILD) cleared in the first 24 hours following both modes of inhalation. Retention after
1938 24 hours was well described by a two-component exponential function, the clearance
1939 rates having half-times of about 3.7 days ('intermediate' phase) and 200 days
1940 (attributed to clearance from the AI region). The fractions associated with the

1941 intermediate phase were about 18% ILD after slow inhalation and 6% ILD after
1942 normal inhalation. Deposition in the BB, bb and AI regions calculated using three
1943 different models showed good agreement with, on average, 17%, 63% and 18% ILD,
1944 respectively, after slow inhalation and 30%, 26% and 43% after normal inhalation.
1945 Thus, there was a strong correlation between predicted bronchiolar deposition and the
1946 amount cleared in the intermediate phase, suggesting that the intermediate phase was
1947 associated with about 25% of particles deposited in the bronchioles.

1948 (108) Svartengren *et al* (2001) found very similar retention in each subject when 6
1949 μm d_{ae} particles were inhaled as a shallow bolus and by slow inhalation on separate
1950 occasions. One interpretation was that slow clearance is a characteristic of the
1951 bronchioles, and the pattern of deposition was very similar, even though the
1952 techniques were so different, a view supported by complementary deposition
1953 modelling. However, the possibility could not be excluded that the deposition patterns
1954 were different, with more bronchial deposition following bolus inhalation than
1955 following slow inhalation, and as assumed in the HRTM, slow clearance occurring to
1956 a similar extent in both large and small airways.

1957 (109) Philipson *et al* (2000) investigated the effect of d_p directly by administering
1958 particles with the same d_{ae} , and hence the same lung deposition pattern, but different
1959 densities and so different values of d_p ($d_{\text{ae}} \approx d_p \sqrt{\rho}$ where ρ is the particle density).
1960 Volunteers inhaled 6 μm d_{ae} particles of polystyrene (PSL, density 1.05 g cm^{-3}) and
1961 Teflon (density 2.13 g cm^{-3}). The geometric diameter, d_p , of the Teflon was smaller
1962 ($4.5 \mu\text{m}$) than that of the PSL ($6.1 \mu\text{m}$), and the HRTM predicts f_s to be greater (14%
1963 versus 5%). However, retention of the two particles was similar in each subject.

1964 (110) Smith *et al* (2007, 2008) tested these alternative hypotheses more critically,
1965 also administering two particles of the same d_{ae} , but with a greater difference in
1966 densities, and as shallow boluses to minimise alveolar deposition. In one study,
1967 volunteers inhaled 5 μm d_{ae} PSL and gold ($\rho = 19.3 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$) particles; corresponding
1968 d_p values were 5 and 1.2 μm and values of f_s were about 10% and 50%, respectively.
1969 Hence, according to the HRTM, lung retention of the gold should have been much
1970 greater than that of the PSL. However, no significant difference was observed
1971 between them in any subject. In another study, 8 μm d_{ae} PSL and gold particles were
1972 used and broadly similar results were obtained.

1973 (111) These results are thus inconsistent with the dependence of f_s on d_p assumed in
1974 the HRTM. However, the apparent discrepancy with the results of the bolus
1975 experiments on which the Publication 66 assumptions were based has not been
1976 resolved. A possible explanation may be that the inferred dependence on d_p was
1977 fortuitous. It was based mainly on measurements made with relatively large particles
1978 (d_p or $d_{\text{ae}} > 4 \mu\text{m}$), and there were relatively few such measurements available at the
1979 time.

1980 (112) Another recent study showed inconsistencies with the original HRTM's
1981 assumptions on slow particle clearance from the bronchial tree. Gregoratto *et al*
1982 (2010), in analysing alveolar retention in the study by Philipson *et al* (1996) (see
1983 below), observed that there was far less lung clearance between 7 and 50 days after
1984 inhalation than predicted by the HRTM as a result of slow clearance from the BB and
1985 bb regions, even assuming no clearance from the AI region over that period.

1986 (113) Most of the relevant recent human studies thus suggest that slow clearance in
1987 the conducting airways is associated with particles deposited in the bronchioles: a
1988 simpler explanation than the particle-size dependent clearance mechanism assumed in
1989 Publication 66. In the revised HRTM, it is assumed that slow clearance in the
1990 conducting airways occurs only in the bb region, and following Falk *et al* (1997,
1991 1999) as described above, particles are taken to be cleared from the bb region to the
1992 BB region at a rate of 0.2 d^{-1} ($t_{1/2} \sim 3.5 \text{ d}$) (except for the small sequestered fraction, see
1993 below). The rate of rapid clearance from the BB region to the ET region is unchanged
1994 at 10 d^{-1} .

1995 (114) The results of Falk *et al* (1997, 1999) suggest that only a fraction of particles
1996 deposited in bb is cleared slowly, perhaps 25% for the conditions of their
1997 experiments. If so, it is reasonable to suppose that it occurs mainly in the smaller
1998 bronchioles, as proposed by Camner *et al* (1997). However, given the remaining
1999 uncertainties, (and the lack of deposition fractions available for subdivisions of the bb
2000 region) it is assumed here for simplicity that it applies to all particles deposited in the
2001 bb region. It is also assumed that it applies to all particles cleared from the AI region
2002 to the bb region, unlike the Publication 66 implementation of the HRTM which
2003 assumed that slow clearance applied only to particles deposited directly in the BB and
2004 bb regions. These changes result in a simplification of the model: a single
2005 compartment BB' replaces BB₁ and BB₂ and a single compartment bb' replaces bb₁
2006 and bb₂ (Figure 6). Associated changes to the dosimetric model are described in
2007 Section 3.2.4.

2008

2009 *Sequestration in the airway walls*

2010 (115) The original HRTM assumes that the fraction of particles deposited in the BB
2011 and bb regions retained in the airway wall (BB_{seq} and bb_{seq}) is 0.7% at all sizes, and
2012 that this material clears to lymph nodes at a rate of 0.01 d^{-1} . When the original HRTM
2013 was finalised the phenomenon had only been well quantified by Patrick and
2014 colleagues (*e.g.* Takahashi and Patrick, 1987), who followed retention of activity after
2015 deposition of radio-labelled particles onto the distal trachea of rats. Subsequently,
2016 Takahashi *et al* (1993) conducted similar experiments, instilling ¹³³Ba-labelled BaSO₄
2017 onto the distal trachea of rabbits, dogs and monkeys. The amounts retained 1 week
2018 after injection were 0.145%, 0.044% and 0.043% of the injected amount, respectively.
2019 These values are far lower than found in rats, suggesting inter-species differences.
2020 The value chosen above for retention of particles in the wall of the nasal epithelium,
2021 ET_{seq}, 0.2%, which was based on results for several different materials in several
2022 species, is within the range observed for the trachea. On that basis it is assumed here
2023 that values for both the retained fractions and clearance rates from BB and bb to LN_{TH}
2024 are the same as those for ET_{seq}, *i.e.*, 0.2% and 0.001 d^{-1} . The revised model thus
2025 assumes less transfer to LN_{TH} from BB and bb, but more transfer from the AI region
2026 (see below), maintaining consistency with the ratio of lung to LN_{TH} contents observed
2027 in autopsy studies.

2028 (116) The changes from the treatment of slow clearance from the bronchial tree in
2029 the original HRTM will in many cases decrease dose coefficients. The decreases will
2030 be considerable for Type M alpha-emitting radionuclides with half-lives of weeks or
2031 more, for which slow clearance gave the largest component of the effective dose

2032 coefficient. Changes to parameter values relating to sequestration have little effect on
2033 effective dose coefficients because it only ever makes a small contribution to them.

2034

2035 ***Particle transport: alveolar-interstitial (AI) region***

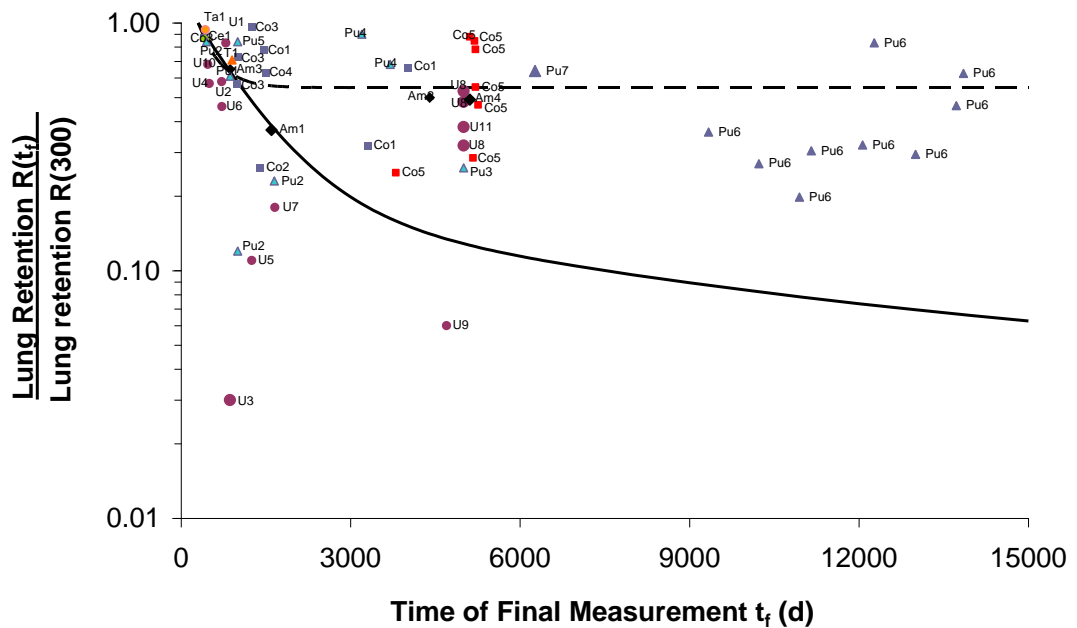
2036 (117) In the original HRTM, the AI region was represented by three compartments:
2037 AI₁, AI₂ and AI₃, which mainly clear to the GI tract via the bronchial tree at rates of
2038 0.02, 0.001 and 0.0001 d⁻¹, respectively (approximate half-times 35, 700 and 7000 d)
2039 (Figure 5). Human lung clearance had been quantified in experimental studies up to
2040 about a year after inhalation (ICRP, 1994a). It was considered that lung retention of
2041 insoluble particles over this time typically follows a two-component exponential
2042 function: about 30% with a half-time of about 30 d, and the rest with a half-time of
2043 several hundred days, giving about 50% retention of the initial alveolar deposit (IAD)
2044 at 300 d. This information was used to define the parameter values for AI₁.

2045 (118) Measurements of activity in the chest after occupational exposure, and of
2046 activity in the lungs at autopsy, indicate that some material can be retained in the
2047 lungs for decades. Information on thoracic retention in humans following accidental
2048 inhalation, based on *in vivo* measurements of radionuclides, was reviewed in
2049 Publication 66 (ICRP, 1994a). Because retention up to 300 d after intake had been
2050 characterised in controlled experiments, only studies of accidental intakes in which
2051 retention was followed for at least 400 d were included. Since the aim was to obtain
2052 guidance on the likely fate of the approximately 50% IAD that remains at 300 d after
2053 intake, thoracic retention $R(t_f)$ at t_f , the time of the final measurement, was expressed
2054 as a fraction of $R(300)$, retention at 300 d. This also facilitated the inclusion of
2055 information in cases where the first measurement was made some time after intake,
2056 and avoided the effects of differences in early clearance due to factors such as aerosol
2057 size, breathing patterns, and soluble components. In Figure E.10 of Publication 66,
2058 thoracic retention $R(t_f)$, as a fraction of $R(300)$, was plotted against t_f : the information
2059 is shown here in Figure 7. Evidence for very long term retention of a significant
2060 fraction (> 10%) of the material remaining in the thorax at 300 d was seen for each of
2061 the elements (cobalt, uranium, plutonium, and americium) for which measurements
2062 extended to 10 y after acute intake of the oxide.

2063 (119) The results were not used to set parameter values for AI₂ and AI₃
2064 quantitatively because it was considered possible that the published *in vivo* studies
2065 represented unusually slow lung clearance. It was noted (ICRP, 1994a) that: “The
2066 fraction of the AI deposit that goes to AI₃ (a_3) is not easily quantified. Since only 50%
2067 IAD is retained at 300 d, a_3 is less than 0.5. Since there is measurable thoracic
2068 retention at 5000 d after intake in some subjects (Figure 7), a_3 is likely to be at least a
2069 few percent of the IAD. As a rounded value it is assumed that $a_3 = 0.1$, and, hence, by
2070 difference, that $a_2 = 0.6$.” Figure 7 also shows retention of insoluble particles as
2071 predicted by the original HRTM: it fits quite well to results where the final
2072 measurement was made less than 2000 days after intake, but underestimates those
2073 with later measurements.

2074 (120) In the revised model, account has been taken of additional human studies
2075 published since the original HRTM was adopted, which all show greater long term
2076 retention in the AI region than was assumed.

2077 (121) A recent study by Davis *et al* (2007) provides better *in vivo* information on
 2078 long-term lung retention than any available when Publication 66 was adopted. A
 2079 group of workers had a simultaneous brief inhalation exposure to particles containing
 2080 cobalt-60, and most (seven) had been followed for about 15 years. It is reasonable to
 2081 assume that they are representative of nuclear industry workers. They all showed
 2082 much slower clearance than the HRTM predicts, consistent with the few data on
 2083 retention beyond 2000 days available at the time that the HRTM was published
 2084 (Figure 7).
 2085



2086 (122)
 2087 Figure 7 Long term thoracic retention following accidental inhalation. References for data
 2088 included in the figure are listed in Table 4. Separate symbols are used for each element. The
 2089 solid and dashed curves show retention of insoluble particles as predicted by the original
 2090 HRTM and the revised HRTM, respectively. Thoracic retention $R(t_f)$ at t_f , the time of the
 2091 final measurement, is expressed as a fraction of $R(300)$, retention at 300 d.
 2092

2093 Table 4 Sources of data on thoracic retention used in Figure 7

COBALT	URANIUM	PLUTONIUM
Co ₁ Newton and Rundo (1971)	U ₁ Ronen (1969)	Pu ₁ Newton <i>et al</i> (1983)
Co ₂ Gupton and Brown (1972)	U ₂ Saxby <i>et al</i> (1964)	Pu ₂ Ramsden (1976)
Co ₃ Raghavendran <i>et al</i> (1978)	U ₃ Rundo (1965)	Pu ₃ Ramsden <i>et al</i> (1978); Ramsden (1984)
Co ₄ Ramsden (1984)	U ₄ Schultz (1966)	Pu ₄ Bihl <i>et al</i> (1988a,b,c)
Co ₅ Davis <i>et al</i> (2007)	U ₅ Scott and West (1967)	Pu ₅ Foster (1991)
	U ₆ West and Scott (1966)	Pu ₆ ORAUT (2007)
CERIUM	U ₇ West and Scott (1969)	Pu ₇ Carbaugh and La Bone (2003)
Ce ₁ Tyler and Lister (1973)	U ₈ West <i>et al</i> (1979)	
	U ₉ Crawford-Brown and Wilson (1984)	AMERICIUM
TANTALUM	U ₁₀ Kvasnicka (1987)	Am ₁ Fry (1976)
Ta ₁ Newton (1977)	U ₁₁ Price (1989)	Am ₂ Toohey and Essling (1980)
		Am ₃ Newton <i>et al</i> (1983)
¹⁹⁵ Au-LABELLED		Am ₄ Wernli and Eikenberg (2007)
TEFLON		
T ₁ Philipson <i>et al</i> (1996)		

2094

2095

2096 (123) A review of long-term lung retention data has therefore been conducted
 2097 (Gregoratto *et al*, 2010). Three other major relevant studies were identified that were
 2098 published since the HRTM was finalised. Their results, together with those on which
 2099 the HRTM was based, were used to develop a new compartment model of particle
 2100 transport from the AI region.

2101 (124) Philipson *et al* (1996) followed lung retention in 10 volunteers for about 3
 2102 years after inhalation of ¹⁹⁵Au-labelled Teflon particles. The duration of this study
 2103 was about three times longer than for the experiments available when the HRTM was
 2104 developed, and it seems likely that there was less leakage of the radioactive label from
 2105 the test particles. Lung retention has been followed for over thirty years in workers
 2106 who inhaled plutonium oxide during a fire at the Rocky Flats Plant (RFP) in October
 2107 1965 (Mann and Kirchner, 1967; ORAUT 2007): another group who should be
 2108 representative of nuclear industry workers (Gregoratto *et al*, 2010). Kuempel *et al*
 2109 (2001) developed a model of particle retention in the AI region that is both
 2110 physiologically more realistic and simpler than that in the original HRTM. Instead of
 2111 the three AI compartments in the HRTM, it has an alveolar compartment which clears
 2112 both to the bronchial tree and to an interstitial compartment which clears to lymph
 2113 nodes. This model was applied to a group of U.S. coal miners with exposure histories
 2114 from which particle mass deposition rates could be assessed, and autopsy
 2115 measurements of dust concentration in lung (and also for lymph nodes in about 50%
 2116 of cases). The model was considered to be the simplest consistent with the data and
 2117 no evidence was found for impaired clearance at high lung loadings over the range

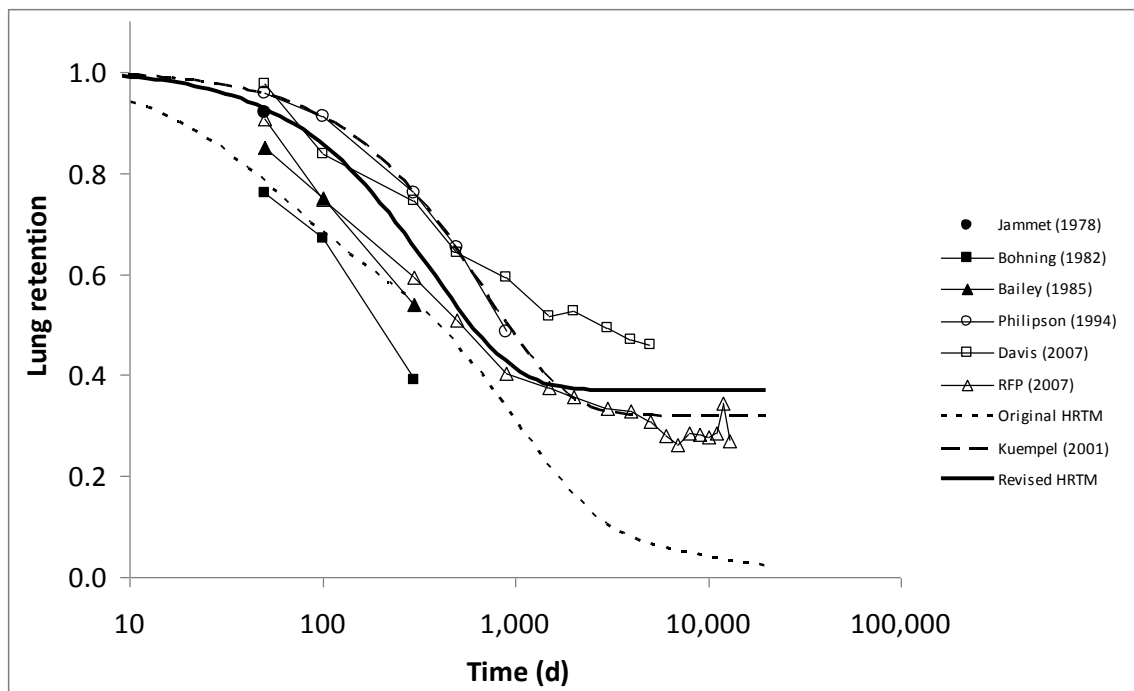
2118 observed. The optimised parameter values derived by Kuempel *et al* (2001) were a
2119 rate $m_T = 0.001 \text{ d}^{-1}$ for clearance from the alveolar compartment to the bronchiolar
2120 region, a rate $m_I = 0.00047 \text{ d}^{-1}$ for clearance from the alveolar compartment to the
2121 interstitium, and a rate $m_{LN} = 10^{-5} \text{ d}^{-1}$ for clearance from the interstitium to lymph
2122 nodes. The main difference from the original HRTM AI model is that a significant
2123 fraction of the AI deposit is sequestered in the interstitium [$m_I/(m_I+m_T) = 0.32$].
2124 Kuempel *et al* (2001) noted that the HRTM underestimated lung retention in the
2125 miners by about a factor of four.

2126 (125) Gregoratto *et al* (2010) showed that the Kuempel *et al* (2001) model provides
2127 an adequate representation of AI retention for the data in the other three studies
2128 outlined above. They developed a new model using the Kuempel *et al* model structure
2129 but fitted to both the experimental datasets on which the HRTM parameter values
2130 were based, and the more recent long-term studies (Figure 8). They obtained particle
2131 transport rates from the alveolar compartment of $m_T = 0.0017 \text{ d}^{-1}$ and $m_I = 0.0010 \text{ d}^{-1}$.
2132 These values are adopted here, but the value of m_T is rounded to 0.002 d^{-1} , reflecting
2133 the underlying uncertainty in the model (Figure 6). These rates give a clearance half-
2134 time from the alveolar compartment of about 250 days ($m_I+m_T = 0.003 \text{ d}^{-1}$), and about
2135 33% of the alveolar deposit of insoluble particles is sequestered in the interstitium.
2136 The greater AI retention than in the original HRTM is likely to result in lung doses
2137 per unit intake that are 50-100% higher for Type S long-lived alpha-emitters, but will
2138 have little, if any effect on more soluble forms.

2139 (126) No clear difference was observed by Gregoratto *et al* (2010) between smokers
2140 and non-smokers in the long-term studies they analyzed. This contrasts with the
2141 greater retention in smokers than in non-smokers observed in those studies reviewed
2142 in Publication 66 in which the comparison could be made, although it is noted that the
2143 earlier studies were of relatively short duration. It also contrasts with the much greater
2144 retention in smokers than in non-smokers observed in studies of alveolar retention of
2145 iron oxide followed using magnetopneumography (see section on iron in Part 2), but
2146 for which absorption to blood rather than particle transport is considered to be the
2147 dominant clearance mechanism. The modifying functions proposed in Table 19 of
2148 Publication 66 relating to the effect of cigarette smoking on particle transport from the
2149 AI region are therefore not considered applicable to the revised model. Furthermore, it
2150 is not recommended that the other modifying factors in that table are applied in
2151 individual dose assessments.

2152 (127) In the original HRTM, the transport rate from the AI region to the thoracic
2153 lymph nodes, LN_{TH} , was set at $2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ d}^{-1}$ to give the ratio of material concentration in
2154 lymph nodes and lungs equal to that estimated from autopsy data: for non-smokers
2155 $[LN]/[L] \approx 20$ after 10,000 days after inhalation of Pu (Kathren *et al*, 1993). Because of
2156 the smaller fraction of the deposit in the BB and bb regions cleared to LN_{TH} via the
2157 airway walls (BB_{seq} and bb_{seq}), and the longer AI retention in the model adopted here
2158 than in the Publication 66 model, the amount cleared to LN_{TH} from the BB and bb is
2159 now negligible compared to that from the AI region. The ratio $[LN]/[L] \approx 20$ is
2160 obtained with a transport rate from the interstitium to LN_{TH} of $3 \times 10^{-5} \text{ d}^{-1}$ (Gregoratto
2161 *et al*, 2010).

2162



2163
2164
2165
2166
2167
2168
2169
2170
2171
2172
2173

Figure 8. Measured lung retention data (Philipson *et al*, 1996; Davis *et al*, 2007; (ORAUT, 2007) and studies reported in Publication 66 Annex E, (ICRP, 1994a) are shown together with the model predictions by assuming initial deposition in the alveolar region only. Predictions of both the original HRTM and the Kuempel *et al* (2001) model with default parameter values are shown. The ‘Revised HRTM’ curve was obtained with optimised AI particle transport parameters $AI_{seq} = 0.37$ and $m = 0.0027 \text{ d}^{-1}$ (from Gregoratto *et al*, 2010).

3.2.3 Clearance: Absorption to blood

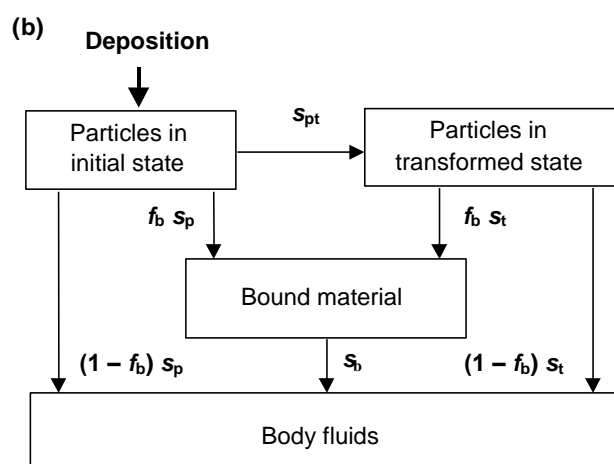
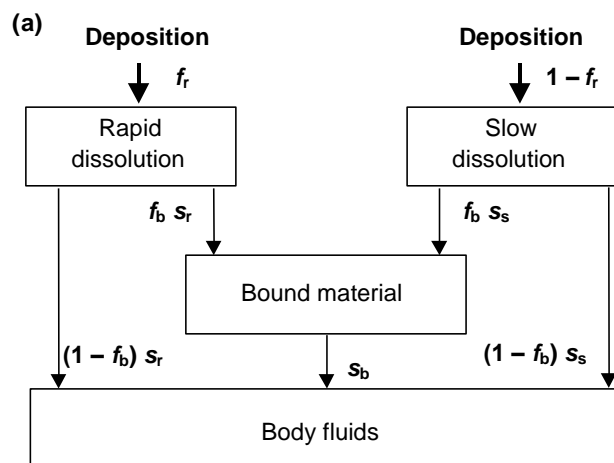
2174
2175
2176
2177
2178
2179
2180
2181
2182
2183
2184
2185
2186
2187
2188
2189
2190

(128) Absorption to blood (body fluids) depends on the physical and chemical form of the deposited material. In both the original and revised HRTM it is assumed (by default) to occur at the same rate in all regions (including the lymph nodes) except ET_1 for which it is assumed that no absorption takes place. It is recognised that absorption is likely to be faster in the AI region where the air-blood barrier is thinner than in the conducting airways (ET, BB and bb regions), but there is insufficient information available to provide a general systematic basis for taking this into account, such as a scaling factor for different rates in different regions.

(129) In the HRTM absorption is treated as a two-stage process: dissociation of the particles into material that can be absorbed into body fluids (dissolution); and absorption into body fluids of soluble material and of material dissociated from particles (uptake). The clearance rates associated with both stages can be time-dependent.

(130) *Dissolution*: both the original and revised HRTM use the same simple compartment model to represent time-dependent dissolution. It is assumed that a fraction (f_r) dissolves relatively rapidly, at a rate s_r , and the remaining fraction ($1 - f_r$) dissolves more slowly, at a rate s_s (Figure 9(a)).

2191 (131) A limitation of this system is that it can only represent an overall dissolution
 2192 rate that decreases with time. To overcome this, Publication 66 also describes a more
 2193 flexible system, shown in Figure 9 (b). In this system, the material deposited in the
 2194 respiratory tract is assigned to compartments labelled ‘Particles in initial state’ in
 2195 which it dissolves at a constant rate s_p . Material is simultaneously transferred (at a
 2196 constant rate s_{pt}) to a corresponding compartment labelled ‘Particles in transformed
 2197 state’ in which it has a different dissolution rate, s_t . With this system, the initial
 2198 dissolution rate is approximately s_p and the final dissolution rate is approximately s_t .
 2199 Thus with a suitable choice of parameters, including $s_t > s_p$, an increasing dissolution
 2200 rate can be represented. The ratio of s_p to s_{pt} approximates to the fraction that
 2201 dissolves rapidly. It may be noted that any time-dependent dissolution behaviour that
 2202 can be represented using the model shown in Figure 9(a) can also be represented by
 2203 the model shown in Figure 9(b) with a suitable choice of parameter values. However,
 2204 the reverse is not true, as noted above.



2205

2206 Figure 9. Alternative compartment models representing time-dependent absorption to body
 2207 fluids (dissolution and uptake). In the model shown in Figure 9(a) a fraction f_r of the deposit
 2208 is initially assigned to the compartment labelled ‘Rapid dissolution’, and the rest of the
 2209 deposit $(1 - f_r)$ is initially assigned to the compartment labelled ‘Slow dissolution’. In the
 2210 model shown in Figure 9(b) all the deposit is initially assigned to the compartment labelled
 2211 ‘Particles in initial state’, and material in the compartment labelled ‘Particles in transformed
 2212 state’ is subject to particle transport at the same rate as material in the compartment labelled
 2213 ‘Particles in initial state’. Material in the compartment labelled ‘Bound material’ is not
 2214 subject to particle transport and is cleared only by uptake into body fluids. For definition of
 2215 symbols, see text.

2216
 2217 (132) If the dissolution rate decreases with time, as is usually the case, either system
 2218 could be used, and would give the same results, with the following values:

$$2219 \quad s_p = s_s + f_r (s_r - s_s)$$

$$2220 \quad s_{pt} = (1 - f_r) (s_r - s_s)$$

$$2221 \quad s_t = s_s$$

2222
 2223 (133) The system shown in Figure 9(b) was applied by default in earlier
 2224 Publications (ICRP, 1994b, 1995c, 1997b). The additional flexibility it provides is,
 2225 however, rarely required in practice, and it is more complex (and less intuitive) to
 2226 present. The simpler approach is therefore adopted now as the default, with the more
 2227 flexible approach retained as an alternative. Examples of materials that show
 2228 dissolution rates that increase with time, which have been represented by ‘particles in
 2229 initial state’ and ‘particles in transformed state’, including uranium aluminide, are
 2230 given in the element sections in subsequent reports of this series.

2231 (134) *Uptake*: uptake to body fluids of dissolved material is usually assumed to be
 2232 instantaneous. For some elements, however, part of the dissolved material is absorbed
 2233 rapidly into body fluids, but a significant fraction is absorbed more slowly because of
 2234 binding to respiratory tract components. To represent time-dependent uptake, it is
 2235 assumed that a fraction (f_b) of the dissolved material is retained in the ‘bound’ state,
 2236 from which it goes into body fluids at a rate s_b , while the remaining fraction $(1 - f_b)$
 2237 goes to body fluids instantaneously (Figure 9). In the model, material in the ‘bound’
 2238 state is not cleared by particle transport processes, but only by uptake to body fluids.
 2239 Thus, only one ‘bound’ compartment is required for each region.

2240 (135) The system shown in Figure 9 applies to each of the compartments in the
 2241 particle transport model shown in Figure 6. It is assumed that no absorption takes
 2242 place from ET₁, but if the model in Figure 9 (a) is used the ET₁ deposition still has to
 2243 be partitioned between fast and slow compartments because material is cleared from
 2244 ET₁ to ET₂, from which absorption does take place.

2245 (136) For all elements, default values of parameters are recommended, according to
 2246 whether the absorption is considered to be fast (Type F), moderate (M) or slow (S).
 2247 The original reference values, given in Publication 66 (ICRP, 1994a) and reproduced
 2248 in Table 5, were specified in terms of the parameters initial dissolution rate, s_p ;
 2249 transformation rate, s_{pt} ; and final dissolution rate, s_t (Figure 9 (b)), rather than f_r , s_r
 2250 and s_s (Figure 9 (a)), for which approximate values were given. For gases or vapours,
 2251 instantaneous uptake to body fluids has also been recommended, as in Publication 68
 2252 (ICRP, 1994b), and defined as Type V (very fast), in Publication 71 (ICRP, 1995).

2253 Table 5. Original HRTM default absorption parameter values for Type F, M, and S
 2254 materials (based on Publication 66, ICRP 1994a, Table 18)^a

Type		F(fast)	M (moderate)	S (slow)
Model parameters:				
Initial dissolution rate (d^{-1})	s_p	100	10	0.1
Transformation rate (d^{-1})	s_{pt}	0	90	100
Final dissolution rate (d^{-1})	s_t	-	0.005	0.0001
Fraction dissolved rapidly	f_r	1	0.1	0.001
Approximate dissolution rates:				
Rapid (d^{-1})	s_r	100	100	100
Slow (d^{-1})	s_s	-	0.005	0.0001
Fraction to bound state	f_b	0	0	0
Uptake rate from bound state (d^{-1})	s_b	-	-	-

2255 ^aThe model values s_p , s_{pt} and s_t in this table are the original HRTM *reference values i.e.*, the
 2256 recommended default values for use in the model. No 'bound' state was assumed for default
 2257 Types.
 2258

2259 (137) The original default values for Types F, M and S (ICRP, 1994a,b, Table 5)
 2260 were not based on reviews of experimental data but on comparison with particle
 2261 transport rates. The value of $100 d^{-1}$ for the rapid dissolution rate, s_r , was chosen to
 2262 equal the particle clearance rate from the nose (ET_2) to the throat. Hence for Type F
 2263 about half the material deposited in ET_2 is absorbed into blood and the rest
 2264 swallowed. The slow dissolution rate for Type S of $10^{-4} d^{-1}$ was chosen to equal the
 2265 slowest particle transport rate from the AI region to the GI tract, to ensure that there
 2266 was some long term lung retention. Type M values were chosen to be intermediate
 2267 between the two. It has, however, been recognised that the parameter values for
 2268 default Type F and Type S represent extremes of 'fast' and 'slow' dissolution rather
 2269 than being representative of these classes of materials.
 2270

2271 *Review of absorption characteristics of inhaled materials*

2272 (138) In developing the subsequent parts of this document, detailed reviews were
 2273 conducted of the absorption characteristics of inhaled materials relevant to
 2274 radiological protection. They are summarised in the inhalation sections of each
 2275 element.

2276 (139) Where information was available, specific parameter values were derived
 2277 from experimental data from both *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies. As described below,
 2278 these provided a database to give guidance on selecting values that are representative
 2279 of materials that are generally considered to clear at 'fast', 'moderate' or 'slow' rates.
 2280 Values selected on that basis for default Type F, M and S have been adopted in the
 2281 revised HRTM used in this series of documents.

2282 (140) Material-specific rates of absorption have been adopted in the element
 2283 sections (and dose coefficients and bioassay functions provided for them on the
 2284 accompanying CD-ROM) for a limited number of selected materials, *i.e.*, those for
 2285 which:

- 2286
- 2287 • There are *in vivo* data from which specific parameter values can be derived;

- 2288 • Results from different studies are consistent;
 2289 • It was considered that occupational exposure to the material is possible;
 2290 • The specific parameter values are sufficiently different from default Type F, M
 2291 or S parameter values to justify providing specific dose coefficients and
 2292 bioassay functions.

2293 (141) Other materials were assigned to default Types using current information.
 2294 Publication 66 did not give criteria for assigning materials to absorption Types on the
 2295 basis of experimental results. Criteria were developed in Publication 71 (ICRP,
 2296 1995c) and their application was discussed further in Guidance Document 3 (ICRP,
 2297 2002b). Type M is assumed for all particulate forms of most elements in the absence
 2298 of information. A material is assigned to Type F if the amount absorbed into body
 2299 fluids by 30 d after an acute intake is *greater* than the amount that would be absorbed
 2300 over the same period from a hypothetical material with a constant rate of absorption
 2301 of 0.069 d^{-1} (corresponding to a half time of 10 d) under identical conditions.
 2302 Similarly, a material is assigned to Type S if the amount absorbed into body fluids by
 2303 180 d after an acute intake is *less* than the amount that would be absorbed over the
 2304 same period from a hypothetical material with a constant rate of absorption to body
 2305 fluids of 0.001 d^{-1} (corresponding to a half-time of about 700 d) under identical
 2306 conditions.

2307 (142) Particulate forms of each element were assigned to the HRTM default
 2308 absorption Types using these criteria. However, strict application of the criterion for
 2309 assigning materials to Type S requires experiments of at least 180 days duration, and
 2310 since this would exclude much useful information, extrapolation has been used in
 2311 some cases, as indicated in the text. For studies where it was possible to apply the
 2312 criteria, a statement is made to the effect that results “are consistent with” (or “give”)
 2313 assignment to Type F (M or S). For studies where the results point towards a
 2314 particular Type, but there was insufficient information to apply the criteria, a
 2315 statement is made to the effect that the results “indicate” or “suggest” Type F (M or S)
 2316 behaviour. For some elements, for which there is little or no experimental data on
 2317 absorption from the respiratory tract, some materials have been assigned to default
 2318 Types based on chemical analogy.

2319 (143) For soluble (Type F) forms of each element, estimates are made of the overall
 2320 rate of absorption from the respiratory tract to blood (where information is available).
 2321 In general this might result from a combination of processes including: (i) dissolution
 2322 of the deposited material (if not inhaled as droplets and so already in solution); (ii)
 2323 transfer through the lining fluid to the epithelium, especially in the conducting
 2324 airways; (iii) transfer across the epithelium. Strictly, in terms of the model structure,
 2325 the first two of these would be described as ‘dissolution’ and be represented by the
 2326 rapid dissolution rate, s_r , because the material is subject to particle transport, whereas
 2327 transfer across the epithelium, unless extremely rapid, should be represented by a
 2328 bound fraction. In practice it would often be difficult to assess how much of the
 2329 overall rate should be assigned to each process, and for simplicity s_r is used to
 2330 represent the overall absorption. However, it is assumed that s_r is a characteristic of
 2331 the element, and this would be expected for transfers through the lining fluid and
 2332 epithelium. Wide variation in values of s_r was found between elements, ranging from
 2333 about 1 d^{-1} (e.g. yttrium) to 100 d^{-1} (e.g. caesium). Some justification for this

2334 approach comes from the fact that the value of s_r tends to have more effect on the
2335 overall biokinetics of an inhaled material deposited in the conducting airways (where
2336 the lining fluid is relatively thick) than on material deposited in the alveolar region,
2337 because it competes with particle transport rates of similar magnitude (10 d^{-1} from
2338 BB' to ET'_2 and 100 d^{-1} from ET'_2 to oesophagus). Because of the wide variation
2339 between elements in the estimated value of s_r , element-specific values are adopted in
2340 this series of documents for those elements for which an estimate of the value could
2341 be made.

2342 (144) For soluble (Type F) forms of some elements, however, part of the dissolved
2343 material is absorbed rapidly into body fluids, but a significant fraction is absorbed
2344 more slowly. To represent this time-dependent uptake, it is assumed that a fraction
2345 (f_b) of the dissolved material is retained in the 'bound' state, from which it goes into
2346 body fluids at a rate s_b , while the remaining fraction ($1 - f_b$) goes to body fluids
2347 instantaneously (Figure 9). Evidence for retention in the bound state, rather than by
2348 transformation into particulate material may be in one or more forms: e.g. systemic
2349 uptake rather than faecal clearance of the retained material, or autoradiography
2350 showing diffuse rather than focal retention of activity. In Part 2, bound state
2351 parameter values are used for cobalt, ruthenium and lead.

2352

2353 *Revision to default absorption parameter values*

2354 (145) As noted above, the specific parameter values derived from experimental data
2355 (from both *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies) provided a database to give guidance on
2356 selecting values that are representative of materials that are generally considered to
2357 clear at 'fast', 'moderate' or 'slow' rates.

2358 (146) When about 100 sets of parameter values were available (*i.e.* when most of
2359 the reviews for Part 2 elements were completed) the results were collated and
2360 analyzed. It is emphasised that this was not a representative survey from which central
2361 values could be derived by some objective statistical means. Rather it provided a basis
2362 for informing judgements as described below.

2363 (147) Parameter values given in the text of the current draft element sections were
2364 sorted into Types F, M and S according to the Publication 71 criteria given above, and
2365 tabulated. Some selection was made. A few values noted to be particularly uncertain
2366 were excluded. Where there was more than one set of results for a material (or very
2367 similar materials) they were merged, and central values taken, to avoid giving too
2368 much weight to a few compounds. Note that for some sets of parameter values,
2369 because of limitations in data fitting, the value of s_r was fixed and only the values of f_r
2370 and s_s were assessed. In such cases the assumed value of s_r was not included in the
2371 derivation of central values.

2372 (148) Medians, geometric means, and geometric standard deviations (GSD) of the
2373 assessed values of f_r , s_r and s_s are given in Table 6. Except for the value of f_r for Type
2374 F materials, GSDs are very large (4 – 14) reflecting the wide ranges of estimated
2375 values, and hence indicating large uncertainties in the central values.

2376 Table 6 Central values of dissolution parameters for Type F, M, and S material from a review
 2377 of experimental data^a

Type		F(fast)	M (moderate)	S (slow)
Fraction dissolved rapidly	fr	0.95 (0.84) [1.4]	0.20 (0.18) [4]	0.007 (0.003) [9]
Dissolution rates:				
Rapid (d-1)	sr	12 (9) [8]	1.7 (1.5) [9]	2.0 (3.8) [14]
Slow (d-1)	ss	0.02 (0.02) [8]	0.003 (0.003) [4]	0.00018 (0.00008) [9]

2378

2379 ^aMedian value, with geometric mean in parentheses, and geometric standard deviation in
 2380 brackets.

2381

2382 (149) Updated default values, given in Table 7, were based mainly on the following
 2383 considerations, but also take account of the large uncertainties in the central values
 2384 and the need for simple rounded numbers.

2385

2386 *Rapid fraction f_r :*

2387 (150) For Type F, the median value (0.95) is close to the current default value of
 2388 1.0. For simplicity in implementation it is preferable not to change to two-phase
 2389 dissolution. The default value remains 1.0.

2390 For Type M, the median value is higher (0.20) than the current default (0.1). The
 2391 updated default value is taken to be 0.2.

2392 For Type S, the median value is higher (0.007) than the current default (0.001).
 2393 The updated default value is rounded to 0.01.

2394

2395 *Rapid dissolution rate, s_r :*

2396 (151) *Type F:* the median of values of s_r estimated from experimental data for
 2397 materials that would be assigned to Type F, is 12 d⁻¹ (Table 5), (much lower than the
 2398 original HRTM default value of 100 d⁻¹). However, this outcome is heavily
 2399 influenced by results for a few elements: about half of the results are from only four
 2400 elements. To include information from a wider range of elements in choosing the
 2401 default value, consideration was also given to the element-specific values of s_r for
 2402 soluble (Type F) forms of the element, which were assessed where suitable
 2403 experimental information was available (see above). There are element-specific
 2404 values for several elements for which no material-specific values were assessed.
 2405 Hence the distribution of element-specific values covers a wider range of elements,
 2406 and in it each element makes the same contribution (one entry): its median value is 50
 2407 d⁻¹. Taking both medians into account, the updated default value of s_r for Type F is
 2408 taken to be 30 d⁻¹.

2409 (152) *Types M and Type S:* The medians of estimated values of s_r for materials that
 2410 would be assigned to Types M and S, are 1.7 d⁻¹, and 2 d⁻¹, respectively (Table 5),
 2411 (very much lower than the original HRTM default of 100 d⁻¹). As for Type F, the
 2412 distributions are heavily influenced by results for a few elements. For Type F,
 2413 consideration of element-specific values of s_r involved a wider range of elements, and
 2414 led to the choice of a somewhat higher value than the material-specific values.
 2415 However, whereas for Type F materials the rapid dissolution rate, s_r , represents
 2416 overall absorption, and is assumed to be element-specific, for Type M and S materials
 2417 s_r is more likely to be determined by dissolution of the particle matrix, and so less

2418 characteristic of the element. Thus element-specific values of s_r , were not assessed for
 2419 Type M and S materials. Taking account of these factors and the overall large
 2420 variation in estimated values of s_r , the updated default values for Types M and S were
 2421 taken to be the same and rounded up to 3 d^{-1} . It is assumed here that the default s_r
 2422 value of 3 d^{-1} for Type M and S materials applies to all elements, unless the Type F
 2423 element-specific value is itself less than 3 d^{-1} , in which case the Type F element-
 2424 specific value is also applied to Types M and S. For example, for silver, default
 2425 values are used for all three Types, as in Table 7; for barium, the element-specific
 2426 value of s_r is 20 d^{-1} for Type F, but the default value of 3 d^{-1} is used for Types M and
 2427 S; for yttrium, the element-specific value of s_r is 1 d^{-1} for Type F, and so 1 d^{-1} is also
 2428 used for Types M and S.

2429 *Slow dissolution rate, s_s :*

2430 (153) For Types M and S, median values are 0.003 d^{-1} and 0.00018 d^{-1} , similar to
 2431 the current default values of 0.005 d^{-1} and 0.0001 d^{-1} . The default values remain
 2432 0.005 d^{-1} and 0.0001 d^{-1} , respectively.

2433 (154) Thus the data currently available suggest larger typical rapid fractions for
 2434 Types M and S materials, but with lower rapid dissolution rates than original default
 2435 values for all three Types. This has the effect of reducing rapid absorption in the
 2436 extrathoracic airways and increasing it in the lungs.

2437

2438 Table 7. Updated default absorption parameter values for Type F, M, and S
 2439 materials^{a,b}

Type		F(fast)	M (moderate)	S (slow)
Fraction dissolved rapidly	f_r	1	0.2	0.01
Dissolution rates:				
Rapid (d^{-1})	s_r	30^c	3^d	3^d
Slow (d^{-1})	s_s	-	0.005	0.0001

2440

2441 ^aReference values (see footnote to Table 3).

2442 ^bThe bound state is also used for default Types of some elements.

2443 ^cElement-specific rapid dissolution rates are adopted for Type F forms of many
 2444 elements

2445 ^dThe element-specific value for Type F is used if it is less than 3 d^{-1}

2446

2447 (155) The default absorption rates, expressed as *approximate* half-times, and the
 2448 corresponding amounts of material deposited in each region *that reach body fluids*
 2449 (from the respiratory tract) can be summarised as follows:

2450

2451 *Type V:* 100% absorbed instantaneously. Regional deposition does not need to
 2452 be assessed for such materials, because in dose calculations they can be
 2453 treated as if they were injected directly into body fluids.

2454 *Type F:* 100% absorbed with a half-time of ~30 minutes. There is rapid
 2455 absorption of almost all material deposited in bb and AI, ~80% of
 2456 material deposited in BB, and ~25% of material deposited in ET₂. The

2457 other material deposited in BB and ET₂ is cleared to the alimentary
2458 tract by particle transport.

2459 *Type M:* 20% absorbed with a half-time of ~6 hours and 80% with a half-time
2460 of ~140 d. There is rapid absorption of ~20%, 5% and 0.5% of material
2461 deposited in bb, BB and ET₂, respectively. About 80% of the deposit in
2462 AI eventually reaches body fluids.

2463 *Type S:* 1% absorbed with a half-time of ~6 hours and 99% with a half-time of
2464 ~7000 d. There is rapid absorption of ~1%, 0.25% and 0.03% of
2465 material deposited in bb, BB and ET₂, respectively. About 30% of the
2466 deposit in AI eventually reaches body fluids.
2467

2468 (156) For absorption Types F, M, and S, some the material deposited in ET₁ is
2469 removed by extrinsic means. Most of the material deposited in the respiratory tract
2470 that is not absorbed is cleared to the alimentary tract by particle transport. The small
2471 amounts transferred to lymph nodes continue to be absorbed into body fluids at the
2472 same rate as in the respiratory tract.
2473

2474 *Decay products formed in the respiratory tract*

2475 (157) Note that the following applies specifically to decay products formed in the
2476 respiratory tract after inhalation of the parent radionuclide. Decay products formed
2477 before inhalation and inhaled with the parent are generally treated as separate intakes,
2478 and so each decay product is assumed to adopt the biokinetics appropriate to the
2479 element of which it is an isotope. Many issues relating to the behaviour of decay
2480 products in the respiratory tract arise in connection with the natural decay series,
2481 which are therefore shown in Figures 10 (uranium-238 series), 11 (uranium-235
2482 series) and 12 (thorium-232 series).

2483 (158) Publication 66 (ICRP, 1994a, Paragraph 272) noted that it would be expected
2484 that:

- 2485 • the rate at which a particle dissociates is determined by the particle matrix and
2486 therefore the dissolution parameter values of the inhaled material would be
2487 applied to decay products formed within particles in the respiratory tract
2488 ('shared kinetics');
- 2489 • decay products formed as noble gases, including radon, would be exceptions
2490 because they would diffuse from the particles;
- 2491 • the behaviour of dissociated material would depend on its elemental form, and
2492 so, for example, bound fraction parameter values for a decay product would
2493 not be those of the parent ('independent kinetics').

2494 (159) These points are considered in turn below. However, it should be noted that in
2495 previous applications of the HRTM (*e.g.* Publications 68, 71, 72 and 78), with the
2496 exception of noble gases, the absorption parameters of the parent were applied to all
2497 members of the decay chain formed in the respiratory tract (shared kinetics). After
2498 consideration (see below) the same approach is taken in this series of documents.
2499

2500 *Retention in the particle matrix*

2501 (160) Generally the assumption applied to the slowly-dissolving fractions of Type M
2502 and Type S materials is that the dissolution of a decay product is determined by
2503 that of the particle matrix in which it is formed. Thus its dissolution parameter
2504 values should be those of the inhaled material.

2505 *Emanation of radon and alpha recoil*

2506 (161) In applying the HRTM, general exceptions have been made for noble gases
2507 formed as decay products (ICRP, 1994b, 1995c). Radioisotopes of xenon formed
2508 from the decay of iodine are assumed to escape from the body without decay, as in
2509 Publication 30 Part 1 (ICRP, 1979). This includes xenon formed in the respiratory
2510 tract. For calculation purposes it is assumed that radon formed as a decay product
2511 within the respiratory tract escapes from the body at a rate of 100 d^{-1} , in addition to
2512 other routes of removal (ICRP, 1995c). This rate was set as a convenient, arbitrary,
2513 rapid rate. The underlying assumption is that loss of radon (for example) is a
2514 continuous process such as diffusion. The three radon isotopes in the natural decay
2515 series: ^{222}Rn (radon), ^{220}Rn (thoron), and ^{219}Rn (actinon) have half-lives of about 3.8
2516 days, 56 seconds and 4 seconds, and therefore decay rates of about 0.18, 1100 and
2517 $15,000 \text{ d}^{-1}$, respectively. Hence the assumption of a rate of loss of 100 d^{-1} implies that
2518 nearly all ^{222}Rn escapes from the particles before it decays, about 10% of ^{220}Rn
2519 escapes, and nearly all ^{219}Rn decays within the particles. As described in the thorium
2520 inhalation section, studies which have compared thorium lung contents with exhaled
2521 thoron seem broadly consistent with the assumption that about 10% of thoron formed
2522 within particles in the lungs escapes, but measurements of emanation of radon (^{222}Rn)
2523 from uranium ore dust give values much lower than 100%.

2524 (162) Griffith *et al* (1980) developed a model to describe the retention of ^{232}U and
2525 its decay products (which include ^{228}Th) in the lungs following inhalation of ThO_2 or
2526 UO_2 particles. In addition to chemical dissolution, they considered emanation of ^{220}Rn
2527 from particles by diffusion, and emanation of decay products, including ^{220}Rn , as a
2528 result of the recoil of nuclei formed in alpha-particle decay. They presented equations
2529 to calculate fractional losses by diffusion and recoil as functions of particle size (but
2530 only for spherical particles). They calculated recoil ranges of about $0.05 \mu\text{m}$ for the
2531 decay products, (assuming a particle density of 10 g cm^{-3}) and fractional losses by
2532 recoil emanation in the range 0.3 – 0.1, for aerosols with AMAD in the range 1 – 10
2533 μm . The calculated loss of ^{220}Rn from particles by diffusion emanation was difficult
2534 to predict, ranging from 0.03 to 0.7 depending on the assumed diffusion coefficient
2535 ($10^{-15} - 10^{-11} \text{ cm}^2 \text{ s}^{-1}$).

2536 (163) Coombs and Cuddihy (1983) measured the fraction of ^{228}Th escaping by
2537 recoil, and the fraction of ^{220}Rn escaping by diffusion, from size-fractionated samples
2538 of ThO_2 and uranium oxide (mixture of $\text{UO}_{2.2}$ and U_3O_8) containing 1% ^{232}U . The
2539 fraction of ^{228}Th escaping increased from ~ 0.07 for particles with AMAD $2.5 \mu\text{m}$
2540 (count median diameter, CMD, $\sim 1 \mu\text{m}$) to ~ 0.3 for particles with AMAD $0.65 \mu\text{m}$
2541 (CMD $\sim 0.1 \mu\text{m}$). This was in reasonable agreement with the model of Griffith *et al*
2542 (1980). Calculated recoil range was expressed in terms of recoil range multiplied by
2543 density, with values of $\sim 20 \mu\text{g cm}^{-2}$. The fraction of ^{220}Rn escaping by diffusion
2544 increased from ~ 0.07 for particles with AMAD $2.5 \mu\text{m}$, to ~ 0.35 for particles with
2545 AMAD $0.65 \mu\text{m}$, and gave a diffusion coefficient of $\sim 3 \times 10^{-14} \text{ cm}^2 \text{ s}^{-1}$. This was

2546 similar to the fraction of ^{228}Th escaping by recoil, and therefore presumably similar to
2547 the fraction of ^{220}Rn escaping by recoil, since the recoil ranges of ^{220}Rn and ^{228}Th are
2548 similar (Griffith *et al*, 1980).

2549 (164) Johnson and Peterman (1984) developed a model to describe the emanation of
2550 ^{220}Rn from ThO_2 particles by alpha-particle recoil, and its exhalation from the lungs.
2551 They calculated that the fraction of ^{220}Rn atoms produced that escaped from particles
2552 (density 10 g cm^{-3}) by recoil decreased from ~ 1.0 at 1 nm to ~ 0.5 at 10 nm and ~ 0.1
2553 at $0.5\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ diameter. The average fraction for an aerosol of AMAD $1\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ was
2554 calculated to be 0.2 , which seems to be broadly consistent with the results derived by
2555 Griffith *et al* (1980).

2556 (165) Thus it seems that recoil is a mechanism that is at least as important as
2557 diffusion for emanation of radon from particles. It seems possible that it is the
2558 dominant mechanism, in which case for aerosols of AMAD about $1\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ there would
2559 be a release to lung air of $\sim 10\%$ of ^{222}Rn , ^{220}Rn or ^{219}Rn formed in particles in the
2560 lungs. Furthermore, alpha-particle recoil applies not only to radon formed as a decay
2561 product, but also to other decay products formed by alpha emission. In the case of
2562 decay chains, this will result in successively lower activities of members of the chain
2563 compared to the parent retained in relatively insoluble particles. There is some
2564 experimental evidence confirming this (see thorium inhalation section). However, it
2565 was considered impractical to implement loss of decay products by alpha recoil in the
2566 calculation of dose coefficients and bioassay functions in this series of documents.
2567 Assessment of the fractional loss for representative workplace aerosols would be
2568 complex, because it depends on the alpha decay energy, the size distribution of
2569 deposited particles, and their shape and density: simplifying assumptions would be
2570 needed for practical implementation. Investigations conducted at by the Task Group
2571 into the effect of recoil on doses for inhaled ^{232}U and its decay products following
2572 inhalation in relatively insoluble particles found, as expected, that doses to the
2573 respiratory tract decreased and doses to tissues resulting from systemic uptake
2574 increased. However, there was little impact on effective dose in this example. The
2575 computational effort involved in identifying radionuclides formed by alpha decay, and
2576 partitioning the decay product atoms between a fraction remaining in the particle and
2577 a fraction escaping to lung fluids would be considerable, and was considered
2578 disproportionate to the benefit gained on a routine basis as in these documents. For
2579 calculation purposes the assumption that radon formed as a decay product within the
2580 respiratory tract escapes from the body at a rate of 100 d^{-1} is retained in this series of
2581 documents. Nevertheless, this phenomenon should be borne in mind, especially when
2582 using decay products to monitor intakes and doses of the parent radionuclide.

2583 *Soluble (dissociated) material*

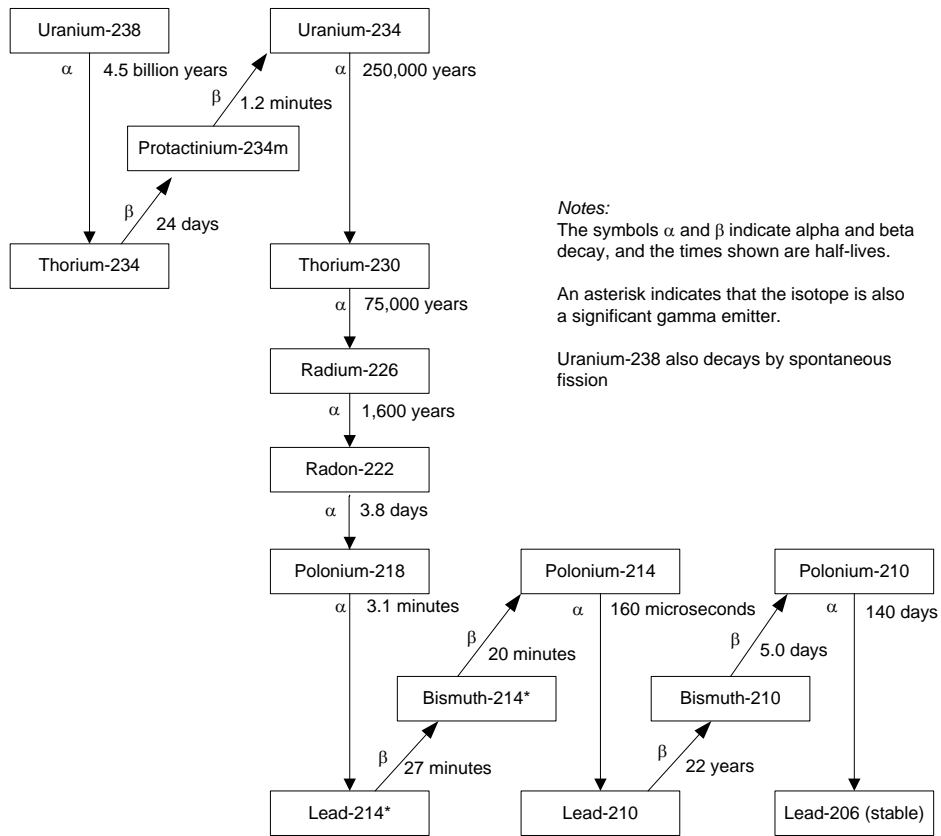
2584 (166) The behaviour of soluble or dissolved material (specifically the rate of uptake
2585 to blood) of decay products formed in the respiratory tract can be expected to depend
2586 on the element of which the decay product formed is an isotope. As discussed above,
2587 for soluble (Type F) materials the rapid dissolution rate, s_r , represents the overall
2588 absorption from the respiratory tract to blood and is element-specific for many
2589 elements. Hence, when a Type F material is deposited in the respiratory tract, the
2590 value of s_r for a decay product formed would be expected to be that of the element
2591 formed ('independent kinetics'), rather than following that of the parent ('shared

2592 kinetics'). Similarly, element-specific bound state parameter values would be expected
2593 to apply to decay products formed in the respiratory tract. However, analysis carried
2594 out by the Task Group showed that application of independent kinetics rather than
2595 shared kinetics within the respiratory tract, to decay products of Type F radionuclides,
2596 would make little difference to respiratory tract tissue dose coefficients (up to a factor
2597 of two, but in most cases much less), and less difference to effective dose coefficients.
2598 For Type F materials absorption to blood is rapid and doses from deposition in
2599 systemic tissues will often make greater contributions to effective dose than doses to
2600 respiratory tract tissues. The additional complexity involved in application of
2601 independent kinetics was therefore considered to be unjustified. Furthermore, in many
2602 practical exposure situations, an intake of a parent nuclide will often be accompanied
2603 by simultaneous intakes of its decay products. Their activities (which, being treated as
2604 separate intakes will be given absorption kinetics appropriate to the element) will
2605 often be considerably greater than the activities of decay products formed within the
2606 respiratory tract, because very little decay of the parent takes place before a Type F
2607 material is absorbed into blood.

2608 (167) Thus, in this series of documents, radioactive decay products formed within
2609 the respiratory tract (with the exception of noble gases) are assumed by default to
2610 follow the absorption behaviour of the parent nuclide, and are given the same
2611 dissolution and uptake parameter values as the parent (shared kinetics). Following
2612 absorption to blood, they are assumed to behave according to the systemic model
2613 applied to the element as a daughter of the parent radionuclide.

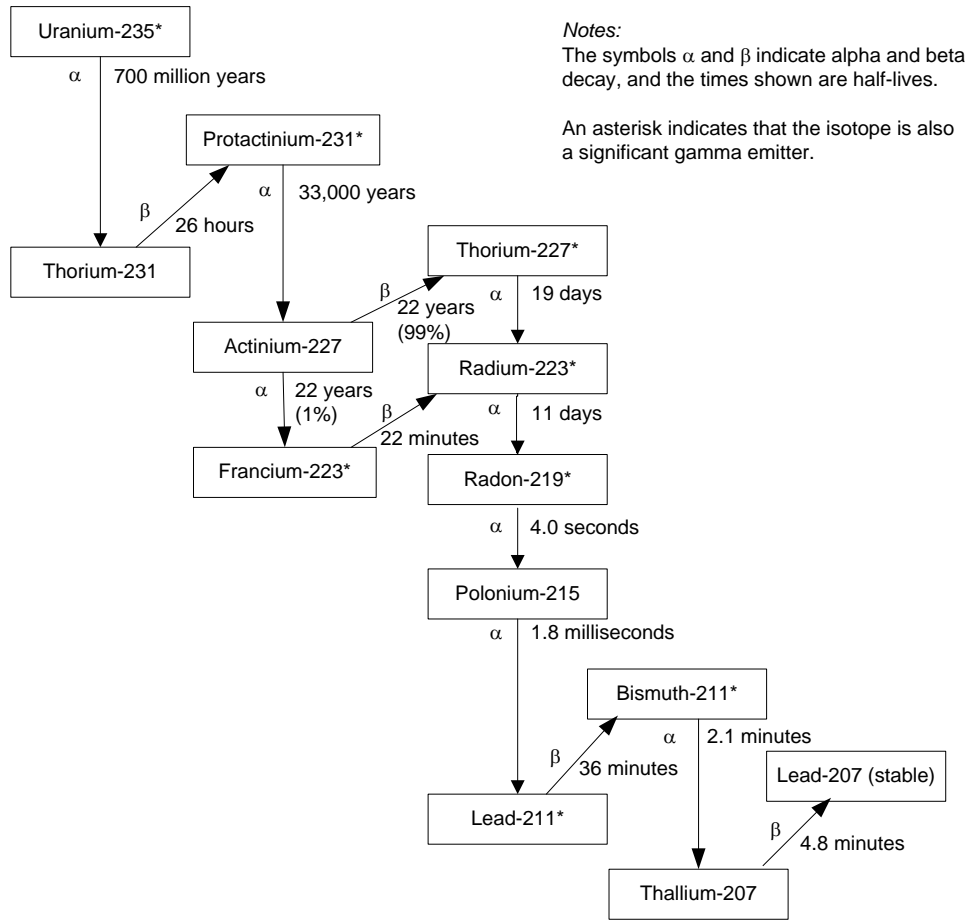
2614 (168) Nevertheless, where experimental results are available which allow direct
2615 comparison between the absorption behaviour of a parent radionuclide, and that of its
2616 radioactive decay products, they are summarised in the inhalation section of the
2617 parent element (*e.g.* uranium, thorium). Such information may be of use to those
2618 carrying out individual monitoring, especially if intakes of a parent are being assessed
2619 by means of measurements on one or more of its decay products. The behaviour of
2620 thorium and its decay products can be of particular importance in this context,
2621 because there is generally significant long-term retention of thorium in the lungs
2622 following its deposition in soluble form, whereas soluble forms of important decay
2623 products, notably radium and lead, are absorbed relatively readily.

2624
2625



2626
 2627
 2628
 2629

Figure 10 Natural decay series: Uranium-238



2630
 2631
 2632
 2633
 2634
 2635

Figure 11 Natural decay series: Uranium-235

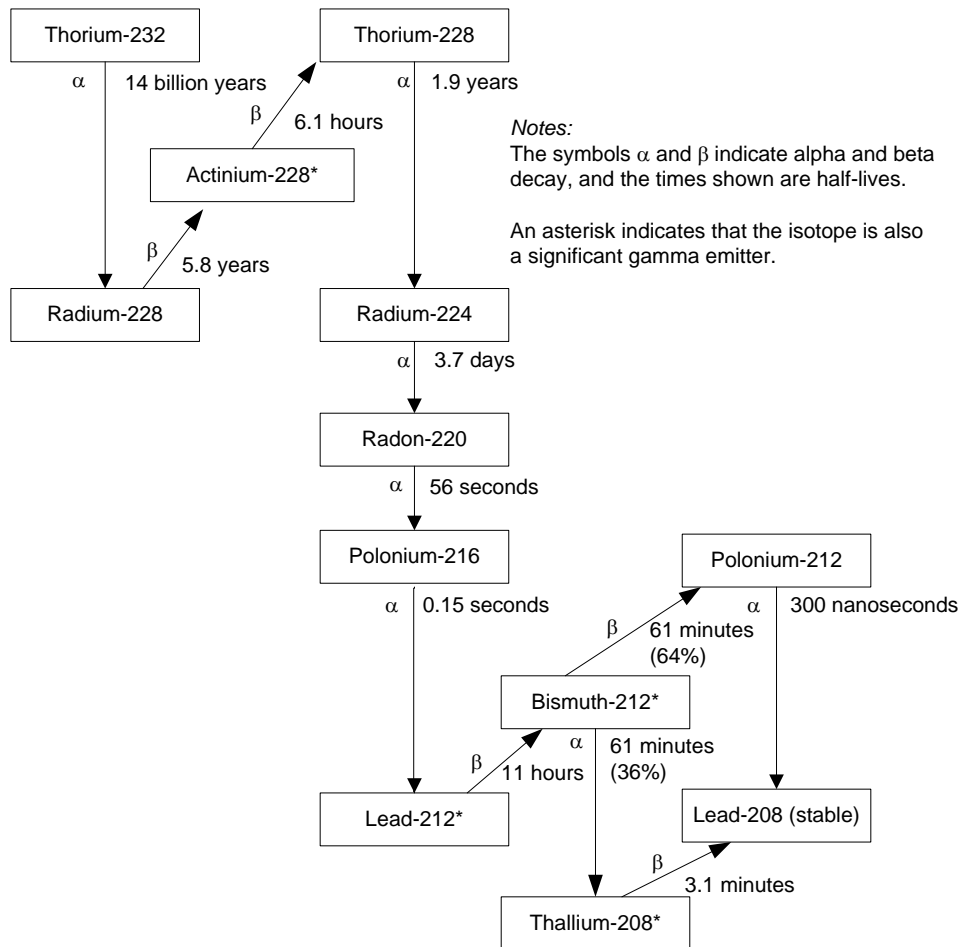


Figure 12 Natural decay series: Thorium-232

2636
2637
2638
2639
2640
2641

3.2.4 Respiratory Tract Dosimetry

2642 (169) The HRTM dosimetric model is described in Publication 66 (ICRP, 1994a)
2643 Chapter 8. For dosimetric purposes, the respiratory tract is treated as two tissues: the
2644 thoracic airways (TH) and the extrathoracic airways (ET). These are sub-divided into
2645 regions, primarily based on considerations of differences in sensitivity to radiation.
2646 The thoracic regions are bronchial, BB; bronchiolar, bb; alveolar-interstitial, AI; and
2647 the thoracic lymph nodes, LN_{TH}. The extrathoracic regions are the anterior nose, ET₁;
2648 the posterior nasal passages, pharynx and larynx, ET₂; and the extrathoracic lymph
2649 nodes LN_{ET} (Figure 3).

2650 (170) The dose to each respiratory tract region is calculated as the average dose to
2651 the target tissue which contains the target cells at risk. In the alveolar region (AI) and
2652 lymph nodes (LN_{TH} and LN_{ET}), the cells at risk are thought to be distributed
2653 throughout the region, and the average dose to the whole lung and the lymph nodes,
2654 respectively, is calculated. For the regions making up the conducting airways (ET₁,
2655 ET₂, BB and bb), the target cells are considered to lie in a layer of tissue at a certain
2656 range of depths from the airway surface and the average dose to this layer is

2657 calculated. The target cells identified in ET₁, ET₂, BB and bb, and the masses of
 2658 tissue containing target cells in each region for dose calculations, are given in Table 8.

2659 (171) In each of these regions there are also several possible source regions. In the
 2660 bronchiolar region (bb), particles retained in the airway wall (bb_{seq}) are taken to be in
 2661 a macrophage layer at a depth of 20-25 μm (*i.e.* below the target cells); activity
 2662 ‘bound’ to the epithelium is uniformly distributed in it; and account is also taken of
 2663 irradiation from activity present in the AI region. In the original HRTM, activity in
 2664 the fast phase of clearance (compartment bb₁, Figure 5) was taken to be in the mucus
 2665 layer above the cilia; activity in the slow phase of clearance (bb₂) was taken to be in
 2666 the mucus between the cilia. In the revised HRTM, there is only one phase of
 2667 clearance.

2668 (172) For each source/target combination, Publication 66 provides absorbed
 2669 fractions for non-penetrating radiations: α, β and electrons; in each case as a function
 2670 of energy. Since these absorbed fractions are not represented in the voxel phantoms
 2671 because of inadequate spatial resolution, the values were derived in Publication 66
 2672 using a single cylindrical geometry to represent each region of the conducting airways
 2673 (ET₁, ET₂, BB, bb): the representative bronchus for BB being 5 mm diameter and the
 2674 representative bronchiole for bb being 1 mm diameter. The absorbed fractions for the
 2675 BB and bb source regions were derived as the thickness-weighted sum of the slow
 2676 and fast clearing source regions, as tabulated in Publication 66.

2677 (173) To take account of differences in sensitivity between tissues, the equivalent
 2678 dose, H_i, to each region, *i*, is multiplied by an apportionment factor, A_i, representing
 2679 the region's estimated sensitivity relative to that of the whole organ. The
 2680 recommended values of A_i are also given in Table 8. In Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007)
 2681 the extrathoracic and thoracic lymph nodes were included in the tissue ‘lymphatic
 2682 nodes’, which is itself included in the list of remainder tissues and organs (Table 2),
 2683 and so are no longer included in the extrathoracic and thoracic airways respectively as
 2684 they were in the original HRTM. The fractions, A_i, of w_T that they were assigned in
 2685 Publication 66 are reassigned to other regions in Table 8. The weighted sum of the
 2686 equivalent dose, H_i, to each region, is the equivalent dose to the extrathoracic or
 2687 thoracic airways respectively:

$$H_{ET} = H_{ET_1} A_{ET_1} + H_{ET_2} A_{ET_2}$$

$$H_{TH} = H_{BB} A_{BB} + H_{bb} A_{bb} + H_{AI} A_{AI}$$

2688
 2689 (174) The tissue weighting factor, w_T of 0.12 specified for lung in Publication 103
 2690 (ICRP, 2007) is applied to the equivalent dose to the thoracic region, H_{TH}. The
 2691 extrathoracic airways are included in the list of remainder tissues and organs (Table
 2692 2).

2693
 2694

Table 8. Target tissues of the respiratory tract

Tissue	Region	Target cells	Depth of target cell nuclei ^a , μm	Mass of target tissue ^{a,b} , kg	Assigned fraction ^{a,c} A _i of w _T
--------	--------	--------------	-----------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

				Male	Female	
Extrathoracic	ET ₁ (anterior nose)	Basal	40-50	2.000 x 10 ⁻⁵	1.729 x 10 ⁻⁵	0.001
	ET ₂ (posterior nose, larynx, pharynx)	Basal	40-50	4.500 x 10 ⁻⁴	3.890 x 10 ⁻⁴	0.999

Thoracic (lungs)	BB (bronchial)	Secretory (BB _{sec})	10-40	8.648 x 10 ⁻⁴	7.771 x 10 ⁻⁴	1/3 ^c
		Basal (BB _{bas})	35-50	4.324 x 10 ⁻⁴	3.885 x 10 ⁻⁴	
	bb (bronchiolar)	Secretory	4-12	1.949 x 10 ⁻³	1.874 x 10 ⁻³	1/3
	AI (alveolar-interstitial)		d	1.100	0.904	1/3

2695

2696 ^aReference values (see footnote a to Table 3). For the BB, bb and AI regions each
 2697 value of A_i is exactly one-third.

2698 ^b Male values were taken from Publication 68, Table 3 (ICRP, 1994b). Female values
 2699 for ET and AI were taken from Publication 66, Table 5. Female values for BB were
 2700 calculated here using information from Publication 66, Tables 2, 4 and B6 (ICRP, 1994a).
 2701 Masses for BB_{sec} and BB_{bas} are the masses of bronchial epithelium through which the nuclei
 2702 of secretory cells and basal cells respectively are distributed and are based on reference
 2703 values of airway dimensions. The mass of AI includes blood, but excludes lymph nodes.

2704 ^cThe dose to BB (H_{BB}) is calculated as the arithmetic mean of the doses to BB_{sec} and
 2705 BB_{bas}.

2706 ^dAverage dose to region calculated.

2707

3.3 Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM)

2708 (175) The Publication 30 (ICRP, 1979) model of the gastrointestinal tract has been
 2709 replaced by the Human Alimentary Tract Model (HATM) described in Publication
 2710 100 (ICRP, 2006). This replacement was motivated by a number of developments,
 2711 including the availability of improved information on the gut transit of materials, and
 2712 developments in our understanding of the location of sensitive cells. The model
 2713 structure is shown in Figure 13, and parameter values are shown in Table 9. As for the
 2714 HRTM, an important feature of the HATM is the specific calculation of doses to
 2715 target regions containing sensitive cells for cancer induction, and the consideration of
 2716 specific absorption and/or retention values, where information is available. The
 2717 HATM and the HRTM are compatible and inter-connected, as shown in Figure 13.

2718

3.3.1 Structure

2720 (176) The HATM depicts the entry of a radionuclide into the oral cavity by
 2721 ingestion or into the oesophagus after particle transport from the respiratory tract. It
 2722 describes the sequential transfer through all alimentary tract regions, including the
 2723 oral cavity, oesophagus, stomach, small intestine, and segments of the colon, followed

2724 by emptying in faeces. Doses are calculated for all these regions. The colon is
2725 partitioned, for the purposes of dose calculations, into right colon, left colon and
2726 rectosigmoid (the sigmoid colon and rectum) based on the availability of transit time
2727 data. The rectum is included with the sigmoid colon, as the rectosigmoid, because of
2728 difficulties in determining transit times separately and because the rectum does not
2729 have a specific w_T value. Total colon doses are combined as a mass-weighted mean to
2730 include the right colon, left colon and rectosigmoid.

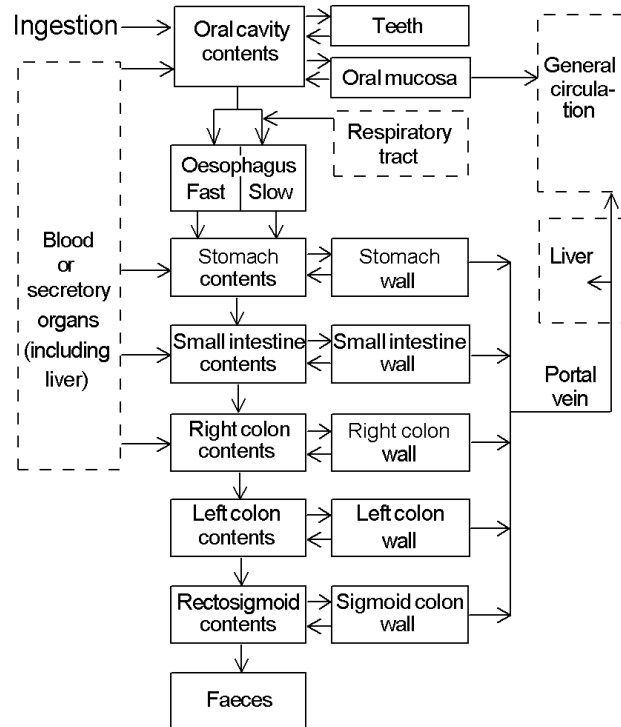
2731

2732 **3.3.2 Model parameters**

2733 (177) The HATM presents different transit times for solid foods, liquids, and total
2734 diet, in the mouth, oesophagus and stomach. First-order kinetics is assumed for all
2735 transfers in the HAT. This is a considerable simplification of the complex processes
2736 involved in transfer of material through the lumen of the alimentary tract but is
2737 expected to provide a reasonably accurate representation of the mean residence time
2738 of a radionuclide in each segment of the tract.

2739

2740 (178)



2741
2742
2743
2744
2745
2746
2747
2748
2749
2750

Figure 13 Structure of the HAT model. The dashed boxes are included to show connections between the HATM and the HRTM and systemic biokinetic models. f_A gives net transfer to blood and replaces the f_1 value of the gastrointestinal tract model. In general, uptake of radionuclides is assumed to occur from the small intestine.

Table 9. Default generic HAT model transfer coefficients (per day) for total diet for the reference worker^{a,b}

From	To	Transfer coefficient ^c (d ⁻¹)
Oral cavity contents	Oesophagus Fast	6480
Oral cavity contents	Oesophagus slow	720
Oesophagus Fast	Stomach contents	12343
Oesophagus Slow	Stomach contents	2160
Stomach contents	Small intestine contents	20.57
SI contents	Right colon contents	6
RC contents	Left colon contents	2
LC contents	Rectosigmoid contents	2
RS contents	Faeces	2

2751
2752
2753
2754
2755
2756
2757

^a The transfer rates of ICRP Publication 100 for the adult male have been assumed for the reference worker.

^b Other transfer coefficients not given here are assumed to be zero unless specified in the relevant element section. In most cases uptake to blood from the alimentary tract is taken to occur from the small intestine (SI) contents, without retention in SI wall. The

corresponding transfer coefficient is $\frac{f_A \lambda_{SI,RC}}{1 - f_A}$, where $\lambda_{SI,RC}$ is the transfer coefficient from SI

2758 contents to right colon contents.

2759 ^c The degree of precision of the values given is for computational purposes and does
2760 not reflect the certainty with which they are known.

2761

2762

2763 ***Modifying factors***

2764 (179) The default regional transit times given in the HATM are central estimates
2765 based on collected data for a given sex, age group, and type of material (*e.g.*, solids,
2766 liquids, caloric liquids, or non-caloric liquids). As extensively illustrated in
2767 Publication 100 (ICRP, 2006), transit of material through each of the major segments
2768 of the tract shows considerable inter- and intra-subject variability even under normal
2769 conditions. Extremely large deviations from the norm may result from constipation,
2770 diarrhoea, unusual diet, pharmaceuticals, and a variety of diseases that affect the
2771 nervous system or increase energy requirements, for example.

2772

2773 ***Sex specific values***

2774 (180) The HATM provides sex-specific parameter values for adults for dimensions
2775 and transit times of contents through the regions. Transit times and dimensions of the
2776 stomach and intestines are generally greater and lower respectively in females
2777 compared to males. In adults, mean transit times for the stomach and colon are about
2778 one-third greater in females than males. However, for simplicity, parameter values for
2779 the reference adult male are used in this report series.

2780

2781 ***Material entering from the respiratory tract***

2782 (181) Mucus and associated materials cleared from the respiratory tract enter the
2783 oesophagus via the oropharynx. For ingested food and liquids, the HATM specifies
2784 two components of oesophageal transit, representing relatively fast transfer of 90% of
2785 the swallowed material (mean transit time of 7 seconds for total diet) and relatively
2786 slow transit of the residual 10% (40 seconds for total diet). It is assumed that the
2787 slower oesophageal transit times apply to all material cleared from the respiratory
2788 tract.

2789

2790 **3.3.3 Absorption from the alimentary tract**

2791 (182) Radionuclides may enter the alimentary tract directly as a result of ingestion,
2792 or indirectly after inhalation and mucociliary escalation of particles from the
2793 respiratory tract to the oropharynx and oesophagus. The absorption of radionuclides to
2794 blood is specified in the HATM as a fraction of the amount entering the alimentary
2795 tract, with total absorption denoted as f_A (ICRP, 2006). The model structure allows for
2796 the use of data on absorption in any region, where information is available. In most
2797 cases, no information will be available on the regional absorption of radionuclides
2798 and the default assumption is that all absorption takes place in the small intestine, *i.e.*
2799 $f_{SI} = f_A$. As a default, it is also assumed there is no recycling from the wall to the
2800 contents of the alimentary tract.

2801 (183) Some f_A values recommended in this report are the same as the f_1 values given
2802 previously for use with the Publication 30 model, since there is not sufficient new

2803 information to warrant a revision in the value. Specific data of absorption from other
2804 regions are considered in the small number of cases for which they were available,
2805 although in some cases (*e.g.* isotopes of iodine) doses to alimentary tract regions and
2806 other tissues are insensitive to assumptions regarding the site of absorption (ICRP,
2807 2006).

2808 (184) The extent of absorption of radionuclides will depend on the element and its
2809 chemical forms. Changes in chemical forms are likely to occur during digestive
2810 processes, beginning in the mouth, but principally occurring in the stomach and the
2811 small intestine. These changes in chemical form or speciation will determine the
2812 availability of the radionuclide for absorption and hence the extent of uptake through
2813 the intestinal epithelium to bloodstream (ICRP, 2006).

2814 (185) Radionuclides entering the alimentary tract in the form of an insoluble matrix
2815 represent a specific case since absorption is likely to be controlled by the biokinetics
2816 of the matrix rather than that of the radionuclide. In the absence of material-specific
2817 data, it is proposed that the fractional absorption of the radionuclide should be taken
2818 to be that of the particle matrix.

2819 (186) A further specific case arises for ingestion of insoluble particulate material
2820 containing radionuclides with decay chains, where the decay products formed in the
2821 stomach or the intestine may be more soluble than their parents. In the absence of
2822 material-specific data, it is proposed (as for the respiratory tract) that the fractional
2823 absorption should be taken to be that of the particle matrix, which could be
2824 predominantly made up of a compound containing the parent radionuclide, or another
2825 material in which the parent radionuclide is a minor constituent.

2826 (187) For inhaled particles reaching the alimentary tract after clearance from the
2827 respiratory tract, it is appropriate to take account of solubility in the lungs in
2828 specifying f_A values. For some elements exhibiting a range in solubility according to
2829 their physicochemical form, there is evidence that the reduced solubility of Type M or
2830 S materials is also associated with reduced intestinal absorption. For inhaled and then
2831 ingested Types M and S materials, the default f_A value is determined here as the
2832 product of f_r for the absorption Type and the f_A value for soluble forms of the element.
2833 However, because of the need for realism in estimates of absorption for application to
2834 bioassay interpretation, attempts have been made wherever possible to use available
2835 data to specify f_A values for different forms rather than rely on defaults.

2836

2837 3.3.4 Retention in the alimentary tract regions

2838 (188) The model structure allows, where information is available, for the use of data
2839 on retention of radionuclides in different compartments. Human and animal data
2840 suggesting or showing retention of ingested radionuclides on teeth or in mucosal
2841 tissues of the walls of alimentary tract regions, principally the small intestine, can be
2842 used to refine calculation of doses to the alimentary tract. An example given in
2843 Publication 100 (ICRP, 2006) for cadmium shows that retention of ^{115}Cd on teeth
2844 increases the estimated dose to the oral mucosa by almost two orders of magnitude
2845 compared to that calculated using the Publication 30 model. Similarly, retention of
2846 ^{59}Fe in the wall of the small intestine may increase the dose by about a factor two,
2847 compared to that calculated with the ICRP 30 model. However, in both examples,
2848 these increases in organ doses do not lead to significant changes in the committed

2849 effective doses, which are dominated by contributions from other tissues (ICRP,
2850 2006). Information on retention in alimentary tract tissues is given, where available,
2851 in individual element sections of this report series.

2852

2853 3.3.5 Alimentary Tract Dosimetry

2854 (189) The HATM allows explicit calculations of dose to target regions for cancer
2855 induction within each alimentary tract region, considering doses from radionuclides in
2856 the contents of the regions, and considering mucosal retention of radionuclides when
2857 appropriate.

2858 (190) The oesophagus and oral cavity will receive very low doses from ingested
2859 radionuclides because of short transit times in these regions (ICRP, 2006). However,
2860 they were included because a specific w_T is assigned to the oesophagus (ICRP, 2007),
2861 and because retention in the mouth, on teeth for example, can result in a substantial
2862 increase in dose to the oral mucosa (which was added to the organs and tissues
2863 constituting the remainder in Publication 103).

2864 (191) In general, the alimentary tract regions of greater importance in terms of doses
2865 and cancer risk are the stomach and particularly the colon. While the small intestine
2866 may receive greater doses than the stomach, it is not sensitive to radiation-induced
2867 cancer and is not assigned a specific w_T value (ICRP, 2007), but is included in the
2868 remainder.

2869 (192) An important refinement in the HATM is the methodology used to calculate
2870 doses in the various regions from non-penetrating alpha and electron radiations. Thus,
2871 while the Publication 30 approach was to assume that the dose to the wall was one
2872 half of that to contents of the region, with an additional factor of 0.01 included for
2873 alpha particles to allow for their short range (ICRP, 1979), the HATM takes explicit
2874 account of the location of the target tissue in the mucosal layer of the wall of each
2875 region. The targets relating to cancer induction are taken in each case to be the
2876 epithelial stem cells, located in the basal layers of the stratified epithelia of the oral
2877 cavity and oesophagus and within the crypts that replenish the single cell layer
2878 epithelium of the stomach and small and large intestines.

2879 (193) This new methodology generally results in substantially lower estimates of
2880 doses to the colon from alpha and beta-emitting radionuclides than obtained using the
2881 Publication 30 model. This is because of the loss of the alpha particles and electrons
2882 energies in the colon contents and in the mucosal tissue overlying the target stem cells
2883 (at a depth of 280 – 300 μm). This reduces energy deposition in the target tissue for
2884 electrons and results in zero contribution to dose in the target tissue from alpha
2885 particles emitted within the contents. In the absence of retention of radionuclides in
2886 the alimentary tract wall, doses from ingested alpha emitters to all regions of the
2887 alimentary tract will be solely due to their absorption to blood and subsequent
2888 irradiation from systemic activity in soft tissues.

2889 (194) The consequences of this decrease in local colon dose on the total committed
2890 effective dose will vary according to the radionuclide. Examples given in Publication
2891 100 (ICRP, 2006) for ^{55}Fe , ^{90}Sr and ^{239}Pu show that this decrease of local dose to the
2892 colon has little or no impact on the effective dose since the dominating contributions
2893 are from equivalent doses to organs and tissues from activity absorbed to blood. In
2894 general, the effect on effective dose is small for radionuclides with large f_A values or

2895 long-lived radionuclides with long term retention in the body. However, for the
2896 example of ^{106}Ru , there is a decrease in committed effective dose as well as colon
2897 dose, by about a factor two and five respectively, due to the major contribution to
2898 effective dose from equivalent doses to alimentary tract regions for this radionuclide.

2899

3.4 Intact Skin and Wounds

2900

3.4.1 Intact skin

2901 (195) Intact skin is an effective barrier against entry of most substances into the
2902 body, and few radionuclides cross it to any significant extent. Exceptions of practical
2903 importance are tritiated water in liquid or vapour form, organic carbon compounds
2904 and iodine in vapour form or in solution.

2905 (196) There is no general model for absorption of radionuclides through the skin
2906 because of the wide range of possible exposure scenarios. Skin can become
2907 contaminated by contact with, for example, aerosols, liquids, contaminated surfaces
2908 or contaminated clothing. The physical and chemical form of the contaminant
2909 (including pH) and the physiological condition of the skin are important factors in any
2910 dose assessment.

2911 (197) Both the radiation dose to the area of skin contaminated and the dose to the
2912 whole body as a result of absorption should be considered. ICRP (ICRP, 1991, 2007)
2913 recommends that skin doses should be calculated to sensitive cells, assumed to be at a
2914 depth of 70 μm , or averaged over the layer of tissue 50 to 100 μm below the skin
2915 surface and averaged over the most exposed 1 cm^2 of skin tissue. This applies to
2916 activity either distributed over the skin surface or aggregated in particles. No
2917 dosimetric models are recommended by ICRP for calculating doses from
2918 radionuclides deposited on the skin and no dose coefficients are given.

2919

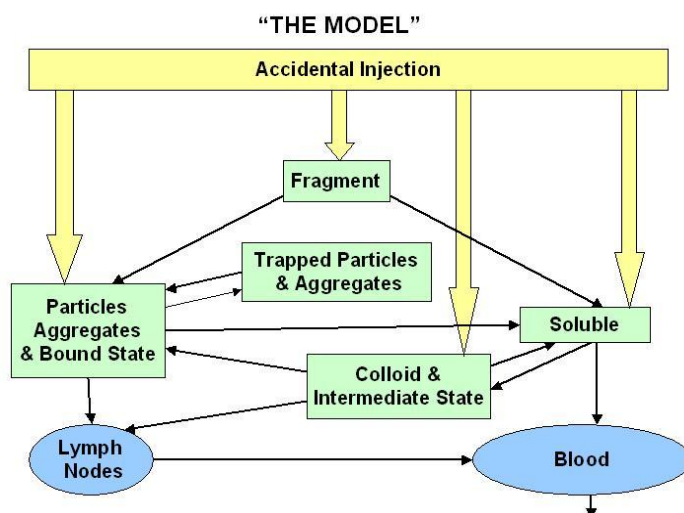
2920

3.4.2 Wounds

2921 (198) Radionuclides may be transferred from the site of a contaminated wound to
2922 blood and to other organs and tissues, and the NCRP has developed a model to
2923 describe this transfer for materials in different physico-chemical forms (NCRP, 2007
2924 and Figure 14). Because of the lack of adequate human data, parameter values for the
2925 model were based on experimental animal data. When coupled with an element-
2926 specific systemic biokinetic model, the model can be used to calculate committed
2927 doses to organs and tissues and committed effective doses following transfer of the
2928 radionuclide to the blood and systemic circulation, as well as to predict urinary and
2929 faecal excretion.

2930 (199) This model was designed to be applicable for both soluble and insoluble
2931 radioactive materials. Five compartments are used were designated to describe
2932 physical or chemical states of the radionuclide within the wound site. These comprise:
2933 Soluble (S) material; Colloidal and Intermediate State (CIS) material; Particles,
2934 Aggregates and Bound State (PABS); Trapped Particles and Aggregates (TPA); and
2935 Fragments. In some cases, the compartments contain the radionuclide in its original
2936 physico-chemical form. In others, the originally deposited material changes state and
2937 moves from one compartment to another with time. In most cases the model

2938 simplifies to two or three compartments depending on the physical and chemical form
 2939 of the radionuclide specified.



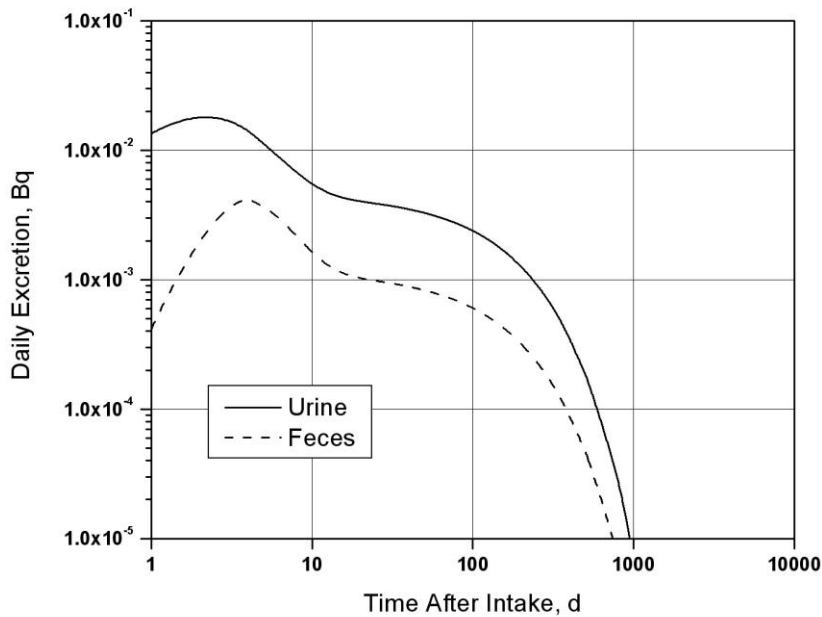
2940
 2941
 2942
 2943
 2944

Figure 14. Diagram illustrating the NCRP Model for Wounds

2945 (200) Four retention categories are defined for radionuclides present initially in
 2946 soluble form in a wound: Weak, Moderate, Strong and Avid, which refer generally to
 2947 the magnitude of persistent retention at the wound site. The criteria for categorisation
 2948 are based on: (a) the fraction of the injected radioactive material remaining 1 d after
 2949 deposition and (b) the rate(s) at which the initially retained fraction was cleared.

2950 (201) Release of the radionuclide from the wound site occurs via the blood for
 2951 soluble materials and via lymph nodes (LN) for particulates. Further dissolution of
 2952 particles in LN also results in radionuclide transfer to the blood. The blood is the
 2953 central compartment that links the wound model with the respective radioelement-
 2954 specific systemic biokinetic model. Once the radionuclide reaches the blood, it
 2955 behaves as if it had been injected directly into blood in a soluble form. This is the
 2956 same approach as is taken in the HRTM and HATM.

2957 (202) To illustrate the application of the model for bioassay interpretation, the
 2958 wound model was coupled to the systemic biokinetic model for ¹³⁷Cs (ICRP, 1979,
 2959 1989, 1997b). The principal default for Cs in the wound model is the Weak Category.
 2960 Accordingly, the parameters for this category were applied to the wound model, and
 2961 urine and faecal excretion patterns predicted (Figure 15). The patterns show peak
 2962 excretion of ¹³⁷Cs in urine at 2-3 days after intake, and for faeces at about 5 days.
 2963 Both patterns reflect the rapid movement of ¹³⁷Cs from the wound site, and its
 2964 distribution in and excretion from the systemic organ sites.



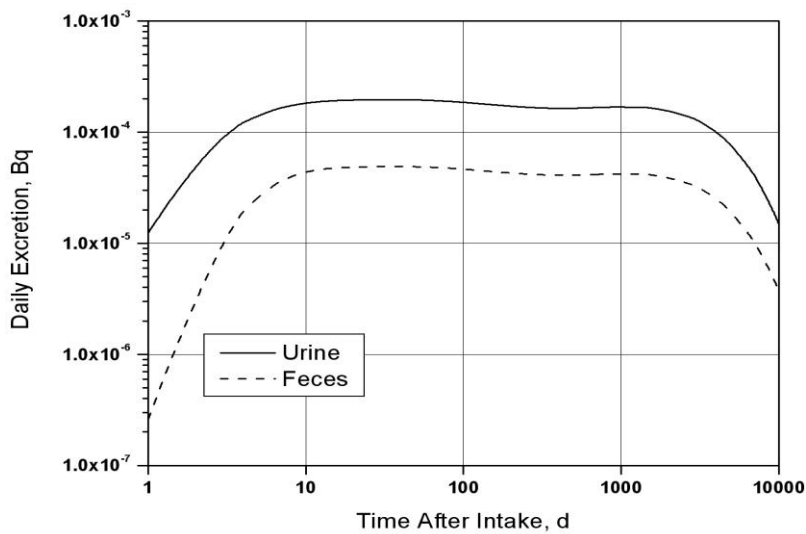
2965 (203)

2966

2967 Figure 15 ¹³⁷Cs Wound, Weak Category; predicted values (Bq per Bq intake) following acute intake.

2968

2969 (204) In comparison, if the ¹³⁷Cs in the contaminated wound site is assumed to be
 2970 present in particles of irradiated power reactor fuel, then it can be given parameter
 2971 values of the Particle Category. In this case, dissolution and absorption to blood are
 2972 much slower than for the Weak Category, and the urine and faecal excretion patterns
 2973 exhibit a pseudo-equilibrium pattern after about 10 days, lasting for several years
 2974 (Figure 16).



2975 (205)

2976 Figure 16 ^{137}Cs Wound, Particle Category; predicted values (Bq per Bq intake) following
2977 acute intake.

2978

2979 (206) The presence of wounds, abrasions, burns or other pathological damage to the
2980 skin may greatly increase the ability of radioactive materials to reach subcutaneous
2981 tissues and thence the blood and systemic circulation. Although much of the material
2982 deposited at a wound site may be retained at the site, and can be surgically excised,
2983 soluble (transportable) material can be transferred to the blood and hence to other
2984 parts of the body.

2985 (207) As noted in Section 3.1, the assessment of internal contamination resulting
2986 from wounds is in practice treated on a case-by-case basis using expert judgement. In
2987 many cases, the amount of a radionuclide transferred from a wound site to blood may
2988 be assessed directly from urine bioassay data. No dosimetric models are
2989 recommended by ICRP for calculating doses from radionuclides transferred from
2990 wound sites to blood and to other organs and tissues, and no dose coefficients are
2991 given.

2992

3.5 Biokinetic Models for Systemic Radionuclides

2993

3.5.1 General patterns of behaviour of systemic radionuclides

2994 (208) Radionuclides entering blood may distribute nearly uniformly throughout the
2995 body (*e.g.*, ^3H as tritiated water), they may selectively deposit in a particular organ
2996 (*e.g.* ^{131}I in the thyroid), or they may show elevated uptake in a few different organs
2997 (*e.g.*, ^{239}Pu or ^{241}Am in liver and bone). If a radionuclide that enters blood is an
2998 isotope of an essential element (*e.g.*, ^{45}Ca or ^{55}Fe), it is expected to follow the normal
2999 metabolic pathways for that element. If it is chemically similar to an essential element
3000 (*e.g.*, ^{137}Cs as a chemical analogue of potassium, and ^{90}Sr as a chemical analogue of
3001 calcium), it may follow the movement of the essential element in a qualitative manner
3002 but may show different rates of transfer across membranes. The behaviour of a
3003 radioisotope of a non-essential element after its uptake to blood (*e.g.*, ^{106}Ru , ^{125}Sb ,
3004 ^{232}Th , ^{239}Pu , or ^{241}Am) depends on such factors as the extent to which it can be
3005 sequestered by the reticuloendothelial (RE) system, its affinity for specific biological
3006 ligands, its filterability by the kidneys, and the ability of the body to eliminate it in
3007 liver bile or other secretions into the gastrointestinal tract. In some cases, the
3008 biokinetics of an isotope of a non-essential element may resemble that of an essential
3009 element to some extent due to common affinities for some but not all components of
3010 tissues and fluids. For example, the behaviour of plutonium in blood and liver is
3011 related to that of iron due to an affinity of plutonium for certain proteins that transport
3012 or store iron (*e.g.* transferrin), but as a whole the biokinetic behaviour of plutonium in
3013 the body differs greatly from that of iron. Also, the behaviours of lead and uranium in
3014 the skeleton bear some resemblance to that of calcium because these elements can
3015 replace calcium to some extent in bone crystal, although the biokinetic behaviours of
3016 lead and uranium in other parts of the body show greater differences compared with
3017 calcium. Nevertheless, it is important to emphasise that the use of chemical or
3018 biological analogues has its limits (Ansoborlo *et al*, 2006).

3019 (209) A model that describes the time-dependent distribution and excretion of a
3020 radionuclide in the body after it reaches the systemic circulation is referred to here as
3021 a systemic biokinetic model. In contrast to ICRP's current and past biokinetic models
3022 describing the behaviour of radionuclides in the respiratory and alimentary tracts,
3023 ICRP's systemic biokinetic models generally have been element-specific models with
3024 regard to model structure as well as parameter values. A generic model structure that
3025 depicts all potentially important systemic repositories and paths of transfer of all
3026 elements of interest in radiation protection would be too complex to be of much
3027 practical use. However, generic model structures have been used in previous ICRP
3028 documents to describe the systemic biokinetics of small groups of elements, typically
3029 chemical families, known or expected to have qualitatively similar behaviour in the
3030 body. For example, Publication 20 (ICRP, 1973) introduced a generic model
3031 formulation for the alkaline earth elements calcium, strontium, barium, and radium,
3032 but provided element-specific values for most model parameters. In Parts 1-3 of
3033 Publication 30 (ICRP, 1979, 1980, 1981) a model developed for plutonium, including
3034 parameter values as well as model structure, was applied to most actinide elements.
3035 The biokinetic models for several of these actinide elements were modified in Part 4
3036 of Publication 30 (ICRP, 1988), where the model structure for plutonium was used as
3037 a generic structure; a common set of parameter values was applied to plutonium,
3038 americium, and curium; and element-specific values were applied to selected
3039 parameters in the models for other elements. The use of generic systemic model
3040 structures was increased in ICRP's reports on doses to members of the public from
3041 intake of radionuclides (ICRP, 1993, 1995a, 1995b) and is further expanded in the
3042 present document because it facilitates the development, description, and application
3043 of systemic biokinetic models.

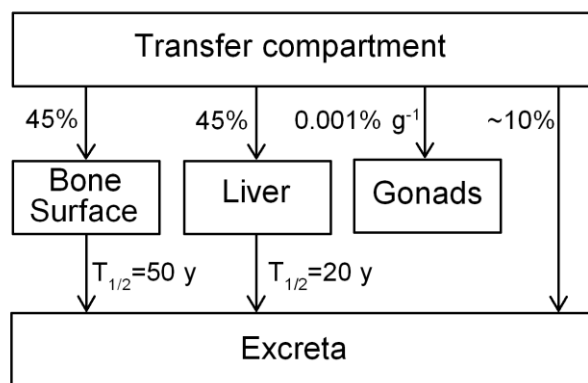
3044

3045 **3.5.2 Formulation of systemic models in modern ICRP reports**

3046 (210) Publication 30 (ICRP, 1979, 1980, 1981, 1988) provided a comprehensive set
3047 of systemic biokinetic models for radionuclides commonly encountered in
3048 occupational settings. The models were generally in the form of retention functions
3049 (*e.g.*, sums of exponential terms) that may be interpreted as first-order compartmental
3050 models with one-directional flow. These models were designed mainly to estimate the
3051 cumulative activities of each radionuclide in its main repositories in the body. They
3052 do not depict realistic paths of movement of radionuclides in the body but describe
3053 only the initial distribution of elements after uptake to blood and the net biological
3054 half-times of elements in source organs. Activity absorbed from the gastrointestinal or
3055 respiratory tract or through wounds was assumed to enter a transfer compartment,
3056 from which it transfers to source organs with a specified half-time, typically 0.25 d or
3057 longer. Retention in a source organ was usually described in terms of 1 - 3 first-order
3058 retention components, with multiple biological half-times representing retention in
3059 multiple hypothetical compartments within a source organ. Feedback of activity from
3060 tissues to blood was not treated explicitly in Publication 30 with the exception of the
3061 model for iodine. It was generally assumed that activity leaving an organ moves
3062 directly to a collective excretion compartment, *i.e.*, radioactive decay along actual
3063 routes of excretion is not assessed. Relatively short-lived radionuclides (half-lives up
3064 to 15 d) depositing in bone were generally assigned to bone surface and longer-lived

3065 radionuclides were assigned either to bone surface or bone volume, depending on
 3066 their main sites of retention in bone as indicated by available data.

3067 (211) The systemic biokinetic models of Publication 30 were intended primarily for
 3068 calculation of dose per unit intake for planning purposes rather than for retrospective
 3069 evaluation of doses. For some elements these systemic biokinetic models were
 3070 developed separately from ICRP's concurrent bioassay models. For example, urinary
 3071 and faecal excretion models for plutonium, americium, and curium recommended in
 3072 Publication 54 (ICRP, 1988) were derived independently of the concurrent systemic
 3073 biokinetic model for these elements shown in Figure 17.
 3074



3075 (212)
 3076 Figure 17. Systemic biokinetic model for plutonium, americium, and curium recommended in
 3077 Publication 30, Part 4 (ICRP, 1988). This illustrates the one-directional flow of systemic
 3078 activity depicted in models of Publication 30 and, for many radionuclides, in later ICRP
 3079 documents on occupational or environmental exposure to radionuclides.
 3080

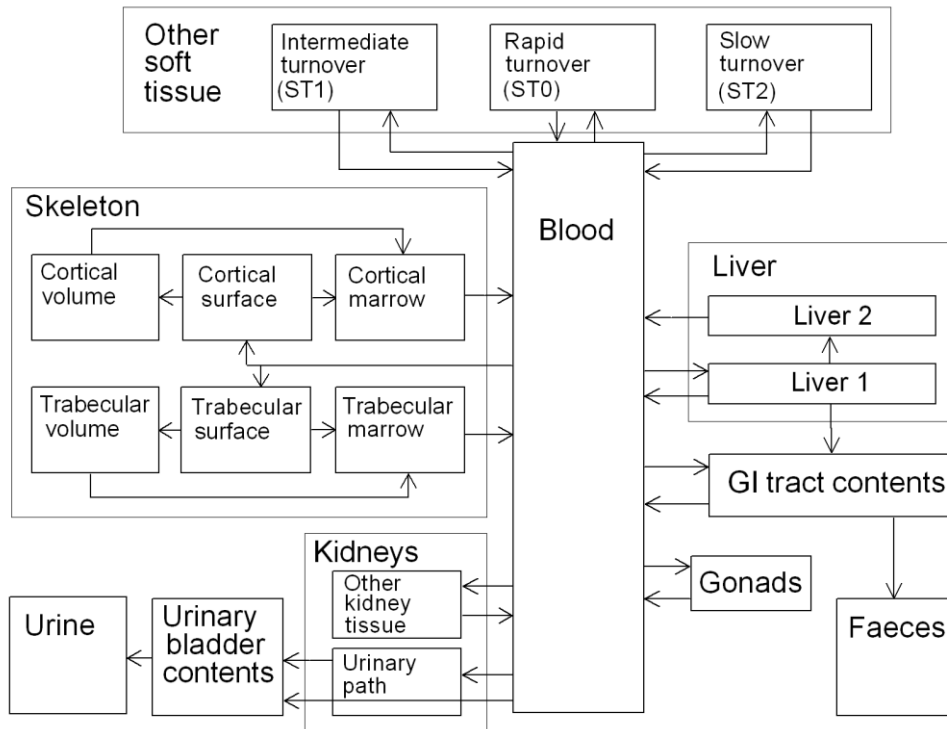
3081 (213) A series of ICRP reports on doses to members of the public from intake of
 3082 radionuclides (ICRP, 1989, 1993b, 1995a,c, 1996) provided age-specific systemic
 3083 biokinetic models for selected radioisotopes of 31 elements: hydrogen, carbon,
 3084 sulphur, calcium, iron, cobalt, nickel, zinc, selenium, strontium, zirconium, niobium,
 3085 molybdenum, technetium, ruthenium, silver, antimony, tellurium, iodine, caesium,
 3086 barium, cerium, lead, polonium, radium, thorium, uranium, neptunium, plutonium,
 3087 americium, and curium. Those reports are referred to here as the Publication 72 series,
 3088 after the summary document that concluded the series (ICRP, 1996). Most of the
 3089 systemic biokinetic models in the Publication 72 series followed the same modelling
 3090 scheme as applied in Publication 30 and illustrated in Figure 17, except that explicit
 3091 excretion pathways were included in reports completed after the issue of Publication
 3092 60. These pathways were included to allow the assessment of doses to the urinary
 3093 bladder and colon, both of which were assigned tissue weighting factors in
 3094 Publication 60. A different modelling scheme involving more realistic paths of
 3095 movement of systemic radionuclides was applied in the Publication 72 series to iron

3096 and the following ‘bone-seeking’ elements: calcium, strontium, barium, lead, radium,
3097 thorium, uranium, neptunium, plutonium, americium, and curium. The model
3098 structures for these elements and the structure for iodine, carried over from
3099 Publication 30, depict feedback of material from organs to blood and, where feasible,
3100 physiological processes that determine the biokinetics of radionuclides. Examples of
3101 such physiological processes are bone remodelling, which results in removal of
3102 plutonium or americium from bone surface, and phagocytosis of aging erythrocytes by
3103 reticuloendothelial cells, which results in transfer of iron from blood to iron storage
3104 sites.

3105 (214) The physiologically based modelling scheme applied in the Publication 72
3106 series is illustrated in Figure 18, which shows the generic model structure used for the
3107 actinide elements thorium, neptunium, plutonium, americium and curium. The
3108 systemic tissues and fluids are divided into five main components: blood, skeleton,
3109 liver, kidneys, and other soft tissues. Blood is treated as a uniformly mixed pool. Each
3110 of the other main components is further divided into a minimal number of
3111 compartments needed to model the available biokinetic data on these five elements or,
3112 more generally, ‘bone-surface-seeking’ elements. The liver is divided into
3113 compartments representing short- and long-term retention. Activity entering the liver
3114 is assigned to the short-term compartment (Liver 1), from which it may transfer back
3115 to blood, to the intestines via biliary secretion, or to the long-term compartment from
3116 which activity slowly returns to blood. The kidneys are divided into two
3117 compartments, one that loses activity to urine over a period of hours or days (Urinary
3118 path) and another that slowly returns activity to blood (other kidney tissue). The
3119 remaining soft tissue other than bone marrow is divided into compartments ST0, ST1,
3120 and ST2 representing rapid, intermediate, and slow return of activity to blood,
3121 respectively. ST0 is used to account for a rapid build-up of activity in soft tissues and
3122 rapid feedback to blood after acute input of activity to blood and is regarded as part of
3123 the activity circulating in body fluids. The skeleton is divided into cortical and
3124 trabecular fractions, and each of these fractions is subdivided into bone surface, bone
3125 volume, and bone marrow. Activity entering the skeleton is assigned to bone surface,
3126 from which it is transferred gradually to bone marrow and bone volume by bone
3127 remodelling processes. Activity in bone volume is transferred gradually to bone
3128 marrow by bone remodelling. Activity is lost from bone marrow to blood over a
3129 period of months and is subsequently redistributed in the same pattern as the original
3130 input to blood. The rates of transfer from cortical and trabecular bone compartments
3131 to all destinations are functions of the turnover rate of cortical and trabecular bone,
3132 assumed to be 3% and 18% per year, respectively. Other parameter values in the
3133 model are element-specific.

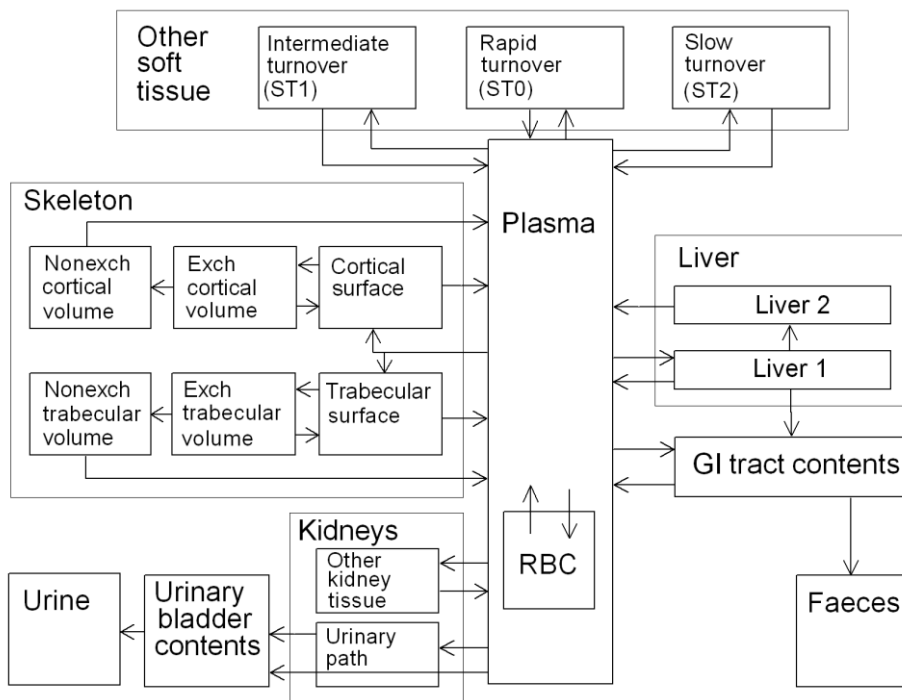
3134 (215) A variation of the model structure shown in Figure 18 was applied in the
3135 Publication 72 series to calcium, strontium, barium, radium, lead and uranium (Figure
3136 19). These elements behave differently from the bone-surface seekers addressed
3137 above in that they diffuse throughout bone volume within hours or days after
3138 depositing in bone. After reaching bone volume, these elements may migrate back to
3139 plasma (via bone surface in the model) or they may become fixed in bone volume and
3140 are then gradually removed to blood at the rate of bone remodelling. The
3141 compartments in Figure 18 representing bone-marrow and gonads are omitted from

3142 the model for bone-volume seekers because these generally are not sites of elevated
 3143 accumulation of these elements. Some of the compartments shown in Figure 19 are
 3144 not applicable to all bone-volume seekers. For example, the liver, kidneys, and red
 3145 blood cells are not important sites of accumulation of calcium and strontium but are
 3146 important repositories for lead. If a particular compartment or pathway shown in
 3147 Figure 19 is not important for a given element, it is not considered separately in the
 3148 model for that element. For example, in the model for calcium, blood is treated as a
 3149 single well-mixed pool, and the liver and kidneys are assumed to be part of ‘Other
 3150 soft tissues’.



3151
 3152
 3153
 3154
 3155
 3156
 3157
 3158

Figure 18. Model structure applied in the Publication 72 series to the bone-surface seekers thorium, neptunium, plutonium, americium, and curium. This structure (or modest variations of it) are applied to a number of elements in this report series, including elements not regarded as bone-seekers.



3159
3160
3161
3162
3163
3164
3165

Figure 19. Model structure applied in the Publication 72 series to calcium, strontium, barium, lead, radium, and uranium. This structure (or modest variations of it) are applied to a number of elements in this report series, including elements not regarded as bone-seekers. Abbreviations: Exch = exchangeable, Nonexch = nonexchangeable, RBC = red blood cells.

3166 (216) The systemic models used in the Publication 72 series were applied in
3167 Publication 68 (ICRP, 1994b), along with ICRP’s Human Respiratory Tract Model
3168 (ICRP, 1994a), to update dose coefficients for occupational intake of radionuclides
3169 based on recommendations in Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991). For elements not
3170 addressed in the Publication 72 series, the systemic biokinetic models applied in
3171 Publication 68 were taken from Publication 30 and modified to include specific
3172 excretion pathways to address doses to the urinary bladder and colon.

3173 (217) The biokinetic models applied in Publication 68 were used in Publication 78
3174 (ICRP, 1997) to provide new recommendations concerning interpretation of bioassay
3175 data for workers for selected radioisotopes of 15 elements. The systemic models for
3176 nine of the 15 elements addressed in Publication 78 were physiological based models
3177 adopted in the Publication 72 series.

3178
3179

3.5.3 Systemic model structures used in this report series

3180 (218) It is now generally recognised that the physiologically descriptive model
3181 structures introduced for selected elements in the Publication 72 series have a number
3182 of potential advantages over the retention-function models traditionally used in
3183 radiation protection. For example, a physiological descriptive model structure
3184 facilitates the use of physiological information and physiologically reasonable
3185 assumptions as a supplement to radiobiological data in the development of model
3186 parameter values; provides a basis for extrapolating beyond the radiobiological

3187 database to different subgroups of the population and to times outside the period of
3188 observation (for example, a parameter value found to depend on the rate of bone
3189 remodelling can be varied with age on the basis of age-specific data on bone
3190 remodelling rates); facilitates the extrapolation of biokinetic data from laboratory
3191 animals to man, in that it helps to focus interspecies comparisons on specific
3192 physiological processes and specific subsystems of the body for which extrapolation
3193 may be valid, even if whole-body extrapolations are not; facilitates the extrapolation
3194 of biokinetic data from an element to its chemical analogues, in that the degree of
3195 physiological similarity of chemical analogues may vary from one physiological
3196 process to another (for example, the alkaline earth elements show similar rates of
3197 transfer from blood to bone but much different rates of transfer to non-exchangeable
3198 sites in bone); links excretion with exchanges of activity among body tissues and
3199 fluids, so that the same model can be used for dose calculation and bioassay
3200 interpretation; allows modelling of the differential biokinetics of parent radionuclides
3201 and their radioactive progeny produced in the body; and allows the addition of
3202 compartments and pathways to the model for purposes of extending the model to new
3203 applications, as was demonstrated in the ICRP documents on doses to the embryo and
3204 fetus (ICRP, 2001) and to the nursing infant (ICRP, 2004) from intakes of
3205 radionuclides by the mother.

3206 (219) On the other hand, the level of physiological realism in the systemic biokinetic
3207 models currently used in radiation protection, including those recommended in the
3208 present report, should not be overstated. Even the most sophisticated models represent
3209 a compromise between biological realism and practical considerations regarding the
3210 quantity and quality of information available to determine parameter values. For
3211 example, the recycling models applied to bone-seeking radionuclides in the
3212 Publication 72 series all include soft-tissue compartments representing fast,
3213 intermediate, and slow exchange with blood for all soft tissues not explicitly
3214 identified in the models. These soft tissue compartments typically are defined on a
3215 kinetic basis rather than a physiological basis, *i.e.*, the compartment sizes and
3216 turnover rates are set for reasonable consistency with data on accumulation and loss
3217 of elements by soft tissues. For some elements, these soft tissue compartments appear
3218 to be associated with specific sites or processes, but the associations generally are not
3219 confirmed by available information. For example, biokinetic studies of calcium
3220 suggest, but do not establish, that the rapid-turnover pool in soft tissues may
3221 correspond roughly to interstitial fluids plus some rapidly exchangeable cellular
3222 calcium (Heaney, 1964; Harrison *et al.*, 1967; Hart and Spencer 1976); the intermediate
3223 turnover rate may stem from a composite of several pools with slower exchange rates,
3224 including mitochondrial calcium, cartilage calcium, and exchangeable dystrophic
3225 calcium (*e.g.*, arterial plaque and calcified nodes) (Heaney, 1964; Borle, 1981); and
3226 long-term retention in soft tissues may be associated with relatively nonexchangeable
3227 dystrophic calcium that gradually accumulates in the human body (Heaney, 1964).

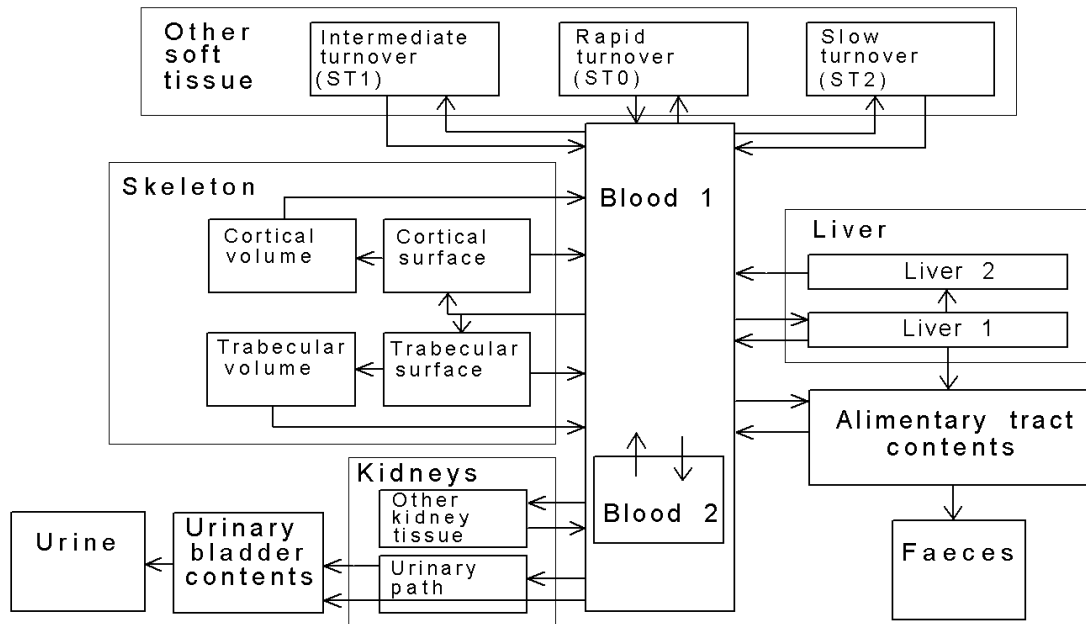
3228 (220) For many elements it is not feasible to develop genuine physiological system
3229 models due to inadequate information on the processes that determine the systemic
3230 behaviour of these elements. Even for relatively well understood elements the model
3231 components are often intended only to represent the net result of multiple processes.
3232 For example, in the model for bone-surface-seeking radionuclides shown in Figure 18

3233 and its precursors (Leggett, 1985, 1992), the depiction of burial of activity in bone
3234 volume is intended to approximate the net result over time of a number of known or
3235 suspected burial processes occurring at different rates. Activity depositing in bone
3236 remodelling units, either in the formation period or in the transitional period between
3237 resorption and formation, may be buried relatively quickly. Delayed burial of surface
3238 activity may result from 'local recycling' during bone restructuring processes; that is,
3239 some of the surface activity removed by osteoclasts during bone remodelling may be
3240 redeposited almost immediately at closely adjacent sites of new bone formation that
3241 are supplied by the same blood vessels. Such local redeposition of mineral ions is
3242 thought to occur, particularly in cortical bone (Parfitt and Kleerekoper, 1980). Burial
3243 of surface deposits may also occur as a result of 'bone drift', a phenomenon in which
3244 new bone is deposited on previously formed bone without any prior resorption
3245 process. Bone drift occurs on a larger scale in immature bone than in mature bone, but
3246 drift within bones and expansion of bone volume via periosteal-endosteal drift
3247 continues throughout life in humans (Epker and Frost, 1965a,b; Frost 1986; Priest *et*
3248 *al.*, 1992). 'Drifting osteons' are observed at all ages within human cortical bone, and
3249 their count is used in forensics for age-at-death estimation.

3250 (221) The systemic biokinetic models used in this series of reports generally follow
3251 the physiologically descriptive modelling scheme applied on a more limited scale in
3252 the Publication 72 series. That is, the model structures include one or more
3253 compartments representing blood, depict feedback of activity from extravascular
3254 repositories to blood (*i.e.*, they are recycling models), and, as far as practical, depict
3255 the main physiological processes thought to determine the systemic biokinetics of
3256 individual elements.

3257 (222) The systemic biokinetic models for some elements, such as iodine and iron,
3258 are developed within model structures specifically designed to describe the unique
3259 behaviour of these elements in the body. The models for most elements, however,
3260 have been constructed within one of the two generic model structures applied in the
3261 Publication 72 series to bone-seeking radionuclides (Figure 18 and 19), or variations
3262 of those structures. This was done not only for bone-seeking elements but for a
3263 number of elements that show relatively low deposition in bone (*e.g.*, cobalt and
3264 ruthenium) because the main repositories and paths of movement of those elements in
3265 the body are included in one or the other of these two structures. In some cases, the
3266 model structure as applied in the Publication 72 series has been modified slightly to
3267 accommodate specific characteristics of an element or to reflect the limited
3268 information on certain aspects of the biokinetics of an element. This is illustrated in
3269 Figure 20, which shows the model applied in this series to cobalt. The structure
3270 shown in Figure 20 is a variation of the structure for bone-surface seekers (Figure 18),
3271 although it could also be viewed as a variation of the structure for bone-volume
3272 seekers (Figure 19). In either case, the model for the skeleton has been simplified
3273 because of the limited information on the skeletal behaviour of cobalt, and two non-
3274 specific blood pools are used to represent two components of retention of cobalt in
3275 blood.

3276



3277
 3278
 3279
 3280
 3281
 3282
 3283
 3284
 3285
 3286
 3287
 3288
 3289
 3290
 3291
 3292
 3293
 3294
 3295
 3296

Figure 20. Structure of the systemic biokinetic model for cobalt used here

(223) The systemic biokinetic models used in this report include explicit routes of biological removal of systemic activity in urine and faeces. Additional excretion pathways such as sweat are also depicted in the models for some elements.

(224) The biokinetic model adopted for the urinary bladder is described in Publication 67 (ICRP, 1993b) and Publication 68 (ICRP, 1994b). The number of voids per day is taken to be six for workers. To represent the kinetics of the bladder in terms of first-order processes, the rate of elimination from the bladder is taken to be 12 d^{-1} .

(225) Activity is assumed to be removed in faeces after transfer from systemic compartments into specified segments of the alimentary tract representing element-specific endogenous secretion pathways. The rates of transfer of secreted material through different segments of the alimentary tract are element-independent rates specified in the HATM. Activity transferred from systemic compartments into the contents of the small intestine or higher segments of the tract is assumed to be reabsorbed in part to blood, with fractional absorption usually but not always assumed to be the same as that for swallowed activity. Activity assigned to the contents of the right colon or lower sections of the tract is not subject to reabsorption.

3297 **3.5.4 Treatment of radioactive progeny produced in systemic**
3298 **compartments**

3299 (226) In Publication 30 (1979) and Publication 68 (1994b) the general assumption
3300 was made that chain members produced in systemic compartments following intake
3301 of a parent radionuclide adopt the biokinetics of the parent. This is referred to as the
3302 assumption of ‘shared kinetics’. The alternate assumption of ‘independent kinetics’ of
3303 chain members was made in Publication 68 when the parent was an isotope of lead,
3304 radium, thorium, and uranium, and also for iodine progeny of tellurium and for noble
3305 gas isotopes arising in various chains. The implementation of independent kinetics of
3306 progeny was based on a general pattern of behaviour of systemically produced
3307 progeny radionuclides suggested by a review of experimental and occupational
3308 studies (Leggett, 1985). That is, the data suggested that most radioactive progeny
3309 produced in soft tissue or bone surface tended to migrate from the parent and begin to
3310 follow their characteristic biological behavior, while radionuclides produced in bone
3311 volume tended to remain with the parent radionuclide in bone over the period of
3312 observation.

3313 (227) The assumption of independent kinetics is generally applied here to progeny
3314 radionuclides produced in systemic compartments or absorbed to blood after
3315 production in the respiratory or alimentary tract. The basic assumption is that a
3316 progeny radionuclide will follow its characteristic behaviour after it first reaches
3317 blood. The rate at which a progeny radionuclide is estimated to migrate from its place
3318 of birth to blood is based on reported data where available. In the absence of specific
3319 information the default assumption is that the progeny radionuclide immediately
3320 begins to follow its characteristic behaviour from the time of birth. The
3321 implementation of this default assumption is essentially a matter of assigning progeny
3322 atoms produced by decay of the preceding chain member(s) to appropriate
3323 compartments of the progeny radionuclide’s characteristic biokinetic model, which
3324 predicts the subsequent fate of these atoms. This is not always a straightforward
3325 exercise due to structural differences in the systemic models for many parent and
3326 progeny combinations. For example, a radionuclide may be born in an explicitly
3327 designated tissue T in the parent’s model that is not an explicitly designated tissue in
3328 the progeny radionuclide’s characteristic model. When this happens, the rate of
3329 removal of the progeny radionuclide from T and the destination of the removed
3330 activity must be defined before the model can be solved. For a number of chains
3331 addressed in this series of reports, this problem has been resolved by expanding the
3332 chain members’ characteristic models to include all explicitly designated tissues in
3333 the models for preceding chain members, based on available biokinetic data on the
3334 progeny radionuclide and its chemical or physiological analogues. An alternate
3335 ‘automated’ default treatment of this problem and other issues regarding differences
3336 in model structures for parent and progeny radionuclides is described in Section 3.7.2,
3337 which addresses the contribution of radioactive progeny to dose.

3338 (228) Even if the progeny radionuclide is produced in a tissue that is an explicitly
3339 designated source organ in the progeny radionuclide’s characteristic model,
3340 implementation of the default treatment of independent kinetics becomes somewhat
3341 arbitrary if the progeny radionuclide’s model divides the tissue into compartments
3342 that are not identifiable with compartments in the parent’s model. For example,

3343 suppose the liver is depicted in the parent’s model as two compartments and also in
 3344 the progeny radionuclide’s model as two compartments. If the compartments
 3345 represent the same physically identifiable portions of the liver in both models, *e.g.*,
 3346 hepatocytes and Kuppfer cells, then decays of the parent in the two liver
 3347 compartments in the parent’s model would be assigned to the corresponding liver
 3348 compartments in the progeny radionuclide’s model. However, if the compartments are
 3349 defined on a kinetic basis in both models and have no obvious physical interpretation,
 3350 it will generally not be evident how the progeny atoms produced in the parent’s liver
 3351 compartments should be divided between the progeny’s liver compartments. In such
 3352 cases the convention used here is to assign all of the progeny atoms to the
 3353 compartment with the highest turnover rate, and assume that the progeny radionuclide
 3354 is removed from that compartment to the central blood compartment at that rate.

3355 **3.6 Medical Intervention**

3356 (229) If medical treatment to prevent uptake or enhance excretion is administered,
 3357 then the data provided in the models summarised above cannot be used directly to
 3358 assess committed effective doses from monitoring information (NCRP, 1980; Gerber
 3359 and Thomas 1992; IAEA 1996). In such circumstances a programme of special
 3360 monitoring (Section 5.5) should be undertaken to follow the retention of the particular
 3361 contaminant in the person, and these data should be used to make a specific
 3362 assessment of committed dose.

3363 **3.7 Methodology for dose calculations**

3364 (230) The general method of dose calculation described here is similar as in earlier
 3365 ICRP Publications (ICRP, 1979, 1994b), but some changes were introduced to accord
 3366 with ICRP Publications (ICRP, , 2008) which used MIRD terminology for
 3367 radiopharmaceutical dosimetry. In order to provide a consistent internal dosimetry
 3368 framework for both radiation protection and nuclear medicine, the standardised
 3369 nomenclature and symbols of MIRD Pamphlet No. 21 (Bolch *et al* 2009) used for
 3370 protection quantities, and their conventions are followed in this section.

3371 (231) The Commission defines effective dose, *E*, for adults as:
 3372

3373
$$E = \sum_T w_T \cdot \left[\frac{H(r_T, 50)^{Male} + H(r_T, 50)^{Female}}{2} \right] \quad (1)$$

3374 where w_T is the tissue weighting factor (Table 2) for the target tissue r_T and
 3375 $H(r_T, 50)^{Male}$ and $H(r_T, 50)^{Female}$ are the committed equivalent doses for the target tissue
 3376 r_T for the reference male and female, respectively, integrated over 50 years. The
 3377 committed equivalent dose in the target tissue for the reference male or female is:
 3378

3379
$$H(r_T, 50) = \int_0^{50} \dot{H}(r_T, t) dt \quad (2)$$

3380

3381 For both sexes the equivalent dose rate $\dot{H}(r_T, t)$ in target tissue r_T at time t after an
 3382 acute intake is expressed as

3383
 3384
$$\dot{H}(r_T, t) = \sum_{r_S} A(r_S, t) \cdot S_w(r_T \leftarrow r_S) \quad (3)$$

3385
 3386 where

3387 $A(r_S, t)$ is the activity, Bq, of the radionuclide in source region r_S at time t after
 3388 intake for the reference male or female; in this report series, only male
 3389 values are used;

3390 $S_w(r_T \leftarrow r_S)$ is the radiation-weighted S value (Bolch *et al*, 2009); *i.e.* the equivalent
 3391 dose in target tissue r_T per nuclear transformation in source region r_S ,
 3392 Sv (Bq s)⁻¹, for the reference male or female.

3393
 3394 (232) The first factor in equation (3) is derived with biokinetic models which
 3395 describe the uptake of activity into the body, its distribution and retention within body
 3396 regions, and its excretion from the body. The second factor is derived with dosimetric
 3397 models which are used to calculate the dose to target tissues arising from
 3398 transformations in source regions.

3399
 3400 **3.7.1 Dosimetric models**

3401 (233) The equivalent dose in target tissue r_T per nuclear transformation in source
 3402 region r_S , is calculated by:

3403
 3404
$$S_w(r_T \leftarrow r_S) = \sum_R w_R \sum_i \frac{E_{R,i} \cdot Y_{R,i} \cdot \phi(r_T \leftarrow r_S, E_{R,i})}{M(r_T)} \quad (4)$$

3405
 3406 where

3407 $E_{R,i}$ is the energy of the i^{th} nuclear transition of radiation type R, in Mev,

3408 $Y_{R,i}$ is the yield of i^{th} radiation of type R per nuclear transformation, (Bq s)⁻¹,
 3409

3410 w_R is the radiation weighting factor for radiation type R, Table 1

3411 $\phi(r_T \leftarrow r_S, E_{R,i})$ is the absorbed fraction, defined as the fraction of energy $E_{R,i}$ of
 3412 radiation type R emitted within the source region r_S that is absorbed in
 3413 the target tissue r_T ,

3414 $M(r_T)$ is the mass of target tissue r_T , kg.

3415
 3416 (234) The energies and yields of the emitted radiations, $E_{R,i}$ and $Y_{R,i}$, are taken
 3417 from Publication 107 (ICRP, 2008), which supersedes Publication 38 (ICRP, 1983).
 3418 For β radiation and neutrons accompanying spontaneous fission, the spectral data are
 3419 used in the calculation of S_w rather than mean values. The sex-dependent target tissue

3420 masses $M(r_T)$ are given in Publication 89 (ICRP, 2002a), which supersedes
 3421 Publication 23 (ICRP, 1975).

3422
 3423 (235) For both sexes, the values of the specific absorbed fractions
 3424 $\Phi(r_T \leftarrow r_S, E_R) = \frac{\phi(r_T \leftarrow r_S, E_R)}{M(r_T)}$ for alpha particles, electrons, photons and neutrons

3425 are taken from Publication 125 (ICRP, 2012). For most source and target
 3426 combinations, the absorbed fractions for photons, electrons and neutrons are based on
 3427 Monte Carlo radiation transport calculations performed using the voxel phantoms for
 3428 the ICRP reference adult male and adult female described in Publication 110 (ICRP,
 3429 2009). These voxel phantoms are constructed from tomographic images of real
 3430 persons, with the height and organ masses adjusted to the values given in Publication
 3431 89 (ICRP, 2002).

3432 (236) For α particles the absorbed fractions are taken to be 1 for $r_S = r_T$ and 0 for r_S
 3433 $\neq r_T$ in most cases. Exceptions are combinations of source regions and target tissues in
 3434 the respiratory and alimentary tracts and in the skeleton. In these cases some regions
 3435 are small enough for alpha particles to escape.

3436 (237) In the human alimentary tract and the human respiratory tract, absorbed
 3437 fractions for photons are derived using the reference voxel models. For electrons and
 3438 α particles, absorbed fractions given for the alimentary tract in Publication 100 (ICRP,
 3439 2006) have been updated with supplementary calculations in Publication 125 (ICRP,
 3440 2012). The absorbed fractions for electrons and α particles in the respiratory tract
 3441 given in Publication 66 (ICRP, 1994a) were adopted in Publication 125 (ICRP, 2012).

3442
 3443 (238) In the skeleton, biokinetic models consider the source regions to be:
 3444

- trabecular bone surfaces and volumes
- cortical bone surfaces (CBS) and volumes. In the new skeletal models, CBS
 3446 can be
 - haversian canal surfaces within the cortical bone cortex surrounding all
 3448 regions of trabecular spongiosa
 - haversian canal surfaces within the cortical bone of the long-bone
 3449 shafts
 - surfaces separating medullary marrow cavities and cortical bone shafts
 3451 of the long bones
- trabecular bone marrow, corresponding to all bone marrow within regions of
 3453 trabecular spongiosa – both active and inactive marrow
- cortical bone marrow, corresponding to all bone marrow within the medullary
 3455 marrow shafts of the long bones, as well as the fluids within the Haversian
 3457 canals of all regions of cortical bone. In the adult, the marrow of the long
 3458 bone shafts is 100% inactive marrow.

3459
 3460
 3461 and the target tissues to be:
 3462

- 50 μm endosteal region and
- active (red) marrow.

 3463

3464
3465 Endosteum is not considered as all marrow (both active and inactive) within
3466 50 μm of a bone surface, but is thought to be the surrogate tissue for the
3467 osteoprogenitor cells, which are present along all bone surfaces regardless of
3468 the marrow cellularity (mixture or percentages of active / inactive marrow).
3469 The biokinetic models presented in this report may therefore have either a
3470 “active marrow source” or a “trabecular marrow source” and specific
3471 alpha/electron AFs will be produced for these two skeletal regions.
3472

3473 (239) Values of specific absorbed fractions at fixed energies are tabulated in
3474 Publication 125 (ICRP, 2012). Specific absorbed fractions at the particular energies of
3475 radionuclide emissions are found by interpolating the tabulated values using a
3476 mathematical technique such as cubic splines.
3477

3478 3.7.2 Contribution of decay products to dose

3479 (240) The dose coefficients given in this report series take into account the
3480 contribution to dose from radionuclides produced in the body by ingrowth. However,
3481 as in the past, it is assumed that no radioactive progeny are present in the initial intake
3482 of the radionuclide for which the dose coefficient is determined, except for radon and
3483 its progeny. Nuclear decay data are taken from Publication 107 (ICRP, 2008).

3484 (241) The source region ‘Other tissues’ is commonly used in systemic models when
3485 uptake is specified in particular organs and tissues and any remaining activity is taken
3486 to be distributed in these other tissues. ‘Other tissues’ is the complement of the
3487 explicitly designated tissues; that is, it is the set of all systemic tissues other than
3488 those specified in the model. If independent kinetics are assumed for decay products,
3489 each member of the decay chain may have different sets of specified source tissues,
3490 and as a result the anatomic identity of ‘Other tissues’ varies among the chain
3491 members. This can lead to anomalies when the biokinetic models are solved, such as
3492 excess activity growing into one compartment at the expense of another. Annexe C.3
3493 of Publication 71 (ICRP, 1995) outlines two alternative computational procedures that
3494 seek to minimise these anomalies.

3495 (242) To explain these approaches, it is useful to distinguish between local and
3496 global sources. Local source tissues and local ‘Other tissues’ are both specific to each
3497 chain member. Global sources incorporate all the chain’s local sources and global
3498 ‘Other tissues’ is the set of all systemic tissues other than the global sources. Thus for
3499 the simple example of a two member chain where the parent’s local source is liver
3500 and the decay product’s local source is kidneys, the corresponding global sources are
3501 liver and kidneys and global ‘Other tissues’ includes all systemic tissues other than
3502 liver and kidneys.

3503 (243) The aim of the two approaches of Annexe C.3 (ICRP, 1995) is to redistribute
3504 transformations from each chain member’s ‘Other tissues’ compartment to sources
3505 r'_S which are in the global set of source compartments but not the local set. For each

3506 such source region, r'_S , a mass fraction $\frac{m(r'_S)}{m(OT)}$ of the chain member’s ‘Other tissues’

3507 (OT) transformations is deducted from OT and transferred to this source r'_S . Sources

3508 present in the kinetics of a chain member, but not in the kinetics of the chain parent,
3509 also receive a transfer of transformations from the chain member's 'Other tissues'
3510 based on a mass fraction computed using the parents $m(OT)$.

3511 (244) The first approach of Annexe C.3 (ICRP, 1995) redistributes transformations
3512 after the given biokinetic models are solved, whilst the second effectively 'automates'
3513 the process by amending the biokinetic models before solving them. In the latter
3514 approach any global sources not included in a chain member's local sources are added
3515 to the chain member's model and represented by the same number of compartments
3516 specified for their 'Other tissues', each with the same kinetic transfer pathways. The
3517 rates of loss from these compartments are the same as the corresponding 'Other
3518 tissues' compartments but the transfer rates to them are mass fractions of those of the
3519 corresponding 'Other tissues' compartments. The transfer rates to the 'Other tissues'
3520 compartments are decremented accordingly. Although both approaches give similar
3521 results, the latter is considered to be more rigorous and is used here.

3522

3523 3.7.3 Bioassay data

3524 (245) A number of issues should be noted regarding the use of biokinetic models for
3525 the retrospective assessment of doses from bioassay data:

3526 (a) As explained in Section 1.4, equivalent dose coefficients for organs and
3527 tissues are calculated separately for the Reference Male and Reference Female and
3528 then averaged in the calculation of effective dose. Some biokinetic models have sex-
3529 specific parameter values, and so a number of possible methods could be
3530 implemented to determine effective dose from bioassay measurements:

- 3531 i. Equivalent doses to organs per unit content of a bioassay quantity could be
3532 calculated separately for males and females. Equation 1 (Section 3.7) would
3533 then be applied to determine effective dose per unit content.
- 3534 ii. Intakes could be calculated separately for males and females. The dose
3535 coefficient would then be applied to the average intake.
- 3536 iii. The intake could be calculated with sex-averaged biokinetic data, and the dose
3537 coefficient would then be applied to this intake. Biokinetic model parameters
3538 could be averaged, or predicted retention/excretion functions could be
3539 averaged.
- 3540 iv. The intake could be determined only with the male (or female) biokinetic
3541 model. The dose coefficient would then be applied to this intake.

3542

3543 Since effective dose is a protection quantity that provides a dose for a Reference
3544 Person rather than an individual-specific dose, significant advantages arise from
3545 adopting a simple approach to retrospective dose assessment. For this reason,
3546 method (iv) has been adopted in this series of reports, with the intake determined
3547 using the male biokinetic model where sex-specific models are provided. It is
3548 recommended that this method should be adopted for the interpretation of bioassay
3549 data.

3550 (b) In the dose per unit content functions for retained activity presented in
3551 subsequent reports of this series, all activity within the body (including contents of the
3552 urinary bladder and the alimentary tract) is included. For the lungs, all activity in the
3553 thoracic region of the respiratory tract, including the thoracic lymph nodes, is

3554 included. For the skeleton, all activity in trabecular and cortical bone (both surface
3555 and volume) and in bone marrow is included.
3556 (c) In the dose per unit content functions for bioassay samples, the dose per unit
3557 content for a 24 h sample of urine or faeces is provided. The sample activity is decay-
3558 corrected to the time of the end of the sampling period.
3559

3560 4 METHODS OF INDIVIDUAL AND WORKPLACE MONITORING

3561 4.1 Introduction

3562 (246) This Chapter briefly describes the main measurement techniques, their
3563 advantages and their limitations for individual monitoring. In most cases, assessment
3564 of intakes of radionuclides may be achieved by body activity measurements, excreta
3565 monitoring, air sampling with personal air samplers, workplace measurements or a
3566 combination of these techniques. The choice of measurement technique will be
3567 determined by a number of factors including the radiation emitted by the radionuclide,
3568 the availability of equipment, the biokinetic behaviour of the contaminant and the
3569 likely radiation dose.

3570

3571 4.2 Body Activity Measurements (In Vivo Measurements)

3572 (247) *In vivo* measurement of body or organ content provides a quick and
3573 convenient estimate of activity in the body. It is performed with one or more photon
3574 detectors placed at specific positions in relation to the subject being measured. It is
3575 feasible only for those radionuclides emitting radiation that can be detected outside
3576 the body. In principle, the technique can be used for radionuclides that emit: X or γ
3577 radiation: positrons, since they can be detected by measurement of annihilation
3578 radiation; or energetic β particles that can be detected by measurement of
3579 Bremsstrahlung radiation (e.g. ^{90}Y , produced by the decay of its ^{90}Sr parent).

3580 (248) The detectors used for *in vivo* measurements are usually partially shielded and
3581 the individual to be measured can be placed in a shielded, low background room to
3582 reduce the interference from ambient sources of radiation.

3583 (249) Direct (*in vivo*) bioassay is likely to be the monitoring method of choice if the
3584 radionuclide is a high yield, high energy gamma-ray emitter or decays by positron
3585 emission (with emission of annihilation radiation), unless the material is excreted
3586 rapidly from the body. The gamma-radiation emitted by such radionuclides is strongly
3587 penetrating, and so is readily detected using scintillation or semiconductor detectors
3588 positioned close to the body. If the material is absorbed rapidly from the respiratory
3589 tract, and is then either distributed uniformly in body tissues (e.g. ^{137}Cs in most
3590 common chemical forms), or is distributed preferentially among a number of organs,
3591 (e.g. ^{59}Fe) then whole body monitoring should be chosen. If the radionuclide deposits
3592 preferentially in a single organ such as the thyroid (e.g. ^{125}I , ^{131}I), then partial body
3593 monitoring of the relevant organ should be chosen. In the case of materials that are
3594 absorbed less rapidly from the respiratory tract (e.g. insoluble forms of ^{60}Co oxide),
3595 lung monitoring is preferable to whole body monitoring soon after the intake, as it
3596 gives a more accurate measure of lung deposition and retention than a whole body
3597 measurement.

3598 (250) Direct bioassay is also useful for some radionuclides that emit photons (X- or
3599 γ -rays) at lower energies and/or with lower yields (e.g. ^{241}Am , ^{210}Pb , ^{144}Ce). However,
3600 in the case of radionuclides that mainly emit X-rays below 25 keV with low yields
3601 (notably, the alpha-emitting isotopes of plutonium and curium) direct bioassay may
3602 not achieve the sensitivity required for radiological protection purposes.

3603 (251) The activity present in a wound can be detected with conventional γ detectors
3604 if the contaminant emits energetic γ -rays. In the case of contamination with α -
3605 emitting radionuclides, detection is much more difficult since the low energy X-rays
3606 that follow the α -decay will be strongly attenuated in tissue; this effect is more
3607 important the deeper the wound. It is often necessary to localise the active material
3608 and this requires a well-collimated detector. Wound monitors must have an energy
3609 discrimination capability if a good estimate is to be made of contamination with
3610 mixtures of radionuclides. If whole body measurements are made, it may be necessary
3611 to shield any activity remaining at the wound site.

3612 (252) For activity calibrations of *in vivo* monitoring systems, laboratories generally
3613 use physical phantoms, either commercially available or handcrafted (*e.g.* the Bottle-
3614 Mannikin-Absorption (BOMAB) phantom, the Lawrence Livermore thorax phantom
3615 (Griffith *et al*, 1986; Snyder *et al*, 2010)). This approach has some limitations with
3616 respect to the body size, body shape, and radionuclide distribution. The distribution of
3617 the radionuclide in the calibration phantom should match that expected in the human
3618 subject as far as possible. Alternatively, numerical calibration techniques may be
3619 applied. Mathematical software combines voxel phantoms and Monte-Carlo statistical
3620 simulations to model photon transport from the phantom and the detection of photons
3621 by a simulated detector (Franck *et al*, 2003; Hunt *et al*, 2003; Kramer, 2005; Gómez-
3622 Ros *et al* 2007; Lopez *et al* 2011a).

3623 (253) The IAEA (1996) and the ICRU (2002a) have given guidance on the direct
3624 measurement of body content of radionuclides.

3625
3626

4.3 Analysis of Excreta and Other Biological Materials

3627 (254) Excreta monitoring programmes usually involve analysis of urine, although
3628 faecal analysis may also be required if the material is relatively insoluble. Other
3629 samples may be analyzed for specific investigations. Examples are the use of nose
3630 blow or nasal smears as routine screening techniques.

3631 (255) The collection of urine samples involves three considerations. Firstly, care
3632 must be taken to avoid adventitious contamination of the sample. Secondly, it is
3633 usually necessary to assess or estimate the total activity excreted in urine per unit time
3634 from measurements on the sample provided. For most routine analyses, a 24 h
3635 collection is preferred but, if this is not feasible, it must be recognised that smaller
3636 samples may not be representative. Where a 24 h sample is not easily collected then
3637 the first morning voiding is preferable for analysis (IAEA, 2000). Measurement of
3638 creatinine concentration in urine has frequently been used to estimate 24 h excretion
3639 of radionuclides from urine samples collected over part of a day. Tritium is an
3640 exceptional case for which it is usual to take only a small sample and to relate the
3641 measured activity concentration to the concentration in body water. Thirdly, the
3642 volume required for analysis depends upon the sensitivity of the analytical technique.
3643 For some radionuclides, adequate sensitivity can be achieved only by analysis of
3644 several days' excreta (*e.g.* Duke, 1998).

3645 (256) The interpretation of faecal samples for routine monitoring involves
3646 uncertainty owing to daily fluctuations in faecal excretion. Ideally, therefore,
3647 collection should be over a period of several days. However, this may be difficult to

3648 achieve in practice and interpretation may need to be based on a single sample. Faecal
3649 monitoring is more often used in special investigations, particularly following a
3650 known or suspected intake by inhalation of moderately soluble or insoluble
3651 compounds. In these circumstances measurement of the quantity excreted daily may
3652 be useful in the evaluation of clearance from the lungs and in the estimation of intake.
3653 Early results may be useful in identifying exposed individuals.

3654 (257) Radionuclides that emit photons may be determined in biological samples by
3655 direct measurement with scintillation or semiconductor detectors. Analysis of α - and
3656 β -emitting radionuclides usually requires chemical separation followed by appropriate
3657 measurement techniques, including alpha spectrometry and liquid scintillation
3658 counting. Measurement of so-called total α or β activity may occasionally be useful as
3659 a simple screening technique.

3660 (258) Increasing use is being made of mass spectrometric techniques for the analysis
3661 of excreta samples. Examples are Inductively Coupled Plasma - Mass Spectrometry
3662 (ICP-MS) that can achieve much lower detection limits for long-lived radionuclides
3663 than is possible with alpha spectrometry and Thermal Ionization Mass Spectrometry
3664 (TIMS), used to monitor very low activities of ^{239}Pu in urine (Inkret *et al*, 1998;
3665 LaMont *et al*, 2005; Elliot *et al*, 2006).

3666 (259) Measurement of activity in exhaled breath is a useful monitoring technique for
3667 some radionuclides such as ^{226}Ra and ^{228}Th , since the decay chains of both these
3668 radionuclides include gases which may be exhaled (Youngman *et al*, 1994;
3669 Sathyabama *et al*, 2005). It can also be used to monitor $^{14}\text{CO}_2$ formed *in vivo* from the
3670 metabolism of ^{14}C -labelled compounds (Leide-Svegborn *et al*, 1999; Gunnarsson *et al*,
3671 2003).

3672 (260) Nasal smears may be employed as a useful screening technique. A positive
3673 nasal swab gives an indication that an unexpected situation might have occurred.
3674 Excreta measurements or lung monitoring should follow, to confirm the intake and to
3675 provide a quantitative assessment.

3676
3677

4.4 Exposure Monitoring of the Workplace

3678 (261) Workplace monitoring is useful for triggering bioassay measurements. In
3679 addition, workplace characterization may be used as a complement to bioassay
3680 monitoring as it provides useful information on physical and chemical composition of
3681 the radionuclides present in the working environment (*e.g.* information on the particle
3682 sizes (AMAD)).

3683 (262) Two workplace monitoring methods may be used for monitoring individual
3684 exposures: personal air sampling (PAS) and static air sampling (SAS). A Personal Air
3685 Sampler is a portable device specifically designed for the estimation of intake by an
3686 individual worker from a measurement of concentration of activity in air in the
3687 breathing zone of the worker. A sampling head containing a filter is worn on the
3688 upper torso within the breathing zone. Air is drawn through the filter by a calibrated
3689 air pump carried by the worker. Ideally, sampling rates would be similar to typical
3690 breathing rates for a worker ($\sim 1.2 \text{ m}^3 \text{ h}^{-1}$). However, sampling rates of current devices
3691 are only about 1/5th of this value. The activity on the filter may be measured at the end
3692 of the sampling period to give an indication of any abnormally high exposures. The

3693 difficulties in assessing intakes from PAS measurements were considered by Whicker
3694 (2004). Breathing zone measurements can vary significantly as they can be affected
3695 by measurement conditions such as orientation of the sampler with respect to source,
3696 on which lapel (right or left) the sampler is worn, design of the air sampling head,
3697 particle size, local air velocities and directions, and sharp gradients in and around the
3698 breathing zone of workers.

3699 (263) Britcher and Strong (1994) reviewed the use of PAS as part of the internal
3700 dosimetry monitoring programmes for the Calder Hall reactors and the Sellafield
3701 nuclear fuel reprocessing facility in the U.K. It was concluded that samplers can be
3702 used to obtain satisfactory estimates of intake for groups of workers. However, for
3703 individuals, the correlation between assessments using PAS and biological samples
3704 was poor and the authors cast doubt on the adequacy of PAS for estimating annual
3705 intakes of individual employees at the levels of exposure encountered in operational
3706 environments. The authors also questioned whether, for environmental monitoring,
3707 PAS offered any advantages over static air sampling programmes. The same lack of
3708 correlation between PAS and bioassay sample-based intake estimates was also seen
3709 for known acute exposures (Britcher *et al*, 1998).

3710 (264) A uranium exposure study was conducted by Eckerman and Kerr (1999) to
3711 determine the correlation between uranium intakes predicted by PASs and intakes
3712 predicted by bioassay at the Y12 uranium enrichment plant in Oak Ridge, USA. This
3713 study concluded that there was poor correlation between the two measurements.

3714 (265) Static air samplers are commonly used to monitor workplace conditions, but
3715 can underestimate concentrations in air in the breathing zone of a worker. Marshall
3716 and Stevens (1980) reported that PAS:SAS air concentration ratios can vary from less
3717 than 1 up to 50, depending on the nature of the work. Britcher and Strong (1994)
3718 concluded from their review of monitoring data for Magnox plant workers in the U.K.
3719 that intakes assessed from PAS data were about an order of magnitude greater than
3720 those implied by SAS data. SAS devices, however, can provide useful information on
3721 radionuclide composition, and on particle size, if used with a size analyzer such as a
3722 cascade impactor.

3723 (266) Overall, the use of PASs and SASs can be an important part of a
3724 comprehensive workplace monitoring programme and is able to provide an early
3725 indication of risk of exposure. Experience of the use of PASs and SASs indicates that
3726 body activity measurements and/or excreta analysis are to be preferred for the
3727 assessment of individual intakes of airborne radionuclides and doses.

3728 (267) However, for some transuranic radionuclides, body activity measurements and
3729 urine analysis can only quantify exposures sufficiently reliably above a few mSv
3730 unless sensitive mass spectrometric techniques for the analysis of bioassay samples
3731 are available. For the detection of lower exposures, a combination of monitoring
3732 methods is then likely to be needed, which could include air sampling and faecal
3733 analysis.

3734

3735

5 MONITORING PROGRAMMES

3736

5.1 Introduction

3737 (268) The design and management of monitoring programmes is considered in this
3738 chapter. It is recommended that the emphasis in any particular monitoring programme
3739 should be on the formal assessment of doses to those workers who are considered
3740 likely to receive routinely a significant fraction of the relevant dose limit, or who
3741 work in areas where exposures could be significant in the event of an accident.

3742 (269) In general, the assignment of an internal exposure monitoring programme to
3743 an individual should be based on the likelihood that the individual could receive an
3744 intake of radioactive material exceeding a predetermined level, as a result of normal
3745 operations or in the event of an accident. The use of individual monitoring for
3746 workers whose effective doses from annual intakes could exceed 1 mSv is common
3747 practice in many organisations, although it may not be required by legislation.

3748 (270) It is important to consider both the monitoring programme design and the dose
3749 assessment process as integral parts of the overall radiation protection programme. An
3750 appropriately designed monitoring programme should provide the data necessary to
3751 enable a dose assessment to meet the specified need; even the most sophisticated dose
3752 assessment calculations cannot compensate for inadequate monitoring data.

3753 (271) Where assessed doses could be significant, there is much to be gained from
3754 using a combination of different monitoring methods (*e.g.* lung, urine, faecal
3755 monitoring and exposure monitoring in the workplace), since they provide
3756 complementary information. For instance, direct bioassay measurements provide
3757 information on deposition and retention in organs, urine measurements can provide a
3758 measure of systemic uptake, while workplace monitoring can provide information on
3759 airborne activity, particle size and chemical form.

3760 (272) The assessment of intakes and/or doses using those measured activities
3761 (bioassay monitoring results and measurements of the workplace) may be complex
3762 and often needs professional judgment, on a case by case analysis. Responsibilities for
3763 dose assessment should only be assigned to professionals with adequate expertise and
3764 skill, acquired through appropriate education, training and practical experience.

3765

5.2 General Principles for the Design of Individual Monitoring Programmes

3767 (273) A specification for an individual monitoring programme includes the
3768 monitoring method (or methods) to be employed (*e.g.* measurement of activity in the
3769 body, in excreta samples, and exposure monitoring in the workplace), the
3770 measurement technique used (*e.g.* photon spectrometry, alpha spectrometry, mass
3771 spectrometry), monitoring intervals for routine monitoring, and measurement or
3772 sample collection times for special monitoring.

3773 (274) Many factors need to be taken into consideration when designing an
3774 individual monitoring programme. These include the purpose of the monitoring (*e.g.*
3775 whether it is carried out to demonstrate compliance with regulatory requirements, or
3776 simply to confirm that doses are very low), local factors such as the number of
3777 workers to be monitored and the availability of particular measurement methods, and

3778 economic factors. The main factors that determine the dosimetric performance of the
3779 monitoring programme relate to the characteristics of the material to which a worker
3780 may potentially be exposed (normally by inhalation). These are:

- 3781 • the radiations emitted by the radionuclide and its progeny;
- 3782 • the effective half-life of the radionuclide;
- 3783 • the respiratory tract deposition characteristics of the aerosol;
- 3784 • the respiratory tract and alimentary tract absorption characteristics of the
3785 material;
- 3786 • the retention in the body or the excretion rate from the body as a function of the
3787 time between intake and measurement;
- 3788 • any preferential deposition in particular body organs and tissues and subsequent
3789 retention in those organs;
- 3790 • any significant differences between the biokinetic behaviour of a parent
3791 radionuclide and its progeny;
- 3792 • the excretion pathway (*e.g.* urine, faeces);
- 3793 • the technical feasibility of the measurement.

3794
3795 (275) The dosimetric performance of the monitoring programme may be assessed by
3796 considering the effect of these factors on the accuracy of assessed doses and on the
3797 sensitivity associated with the monitoring programme, which can be quantified in
3798 terms of the assessed minimum detectable dose (Carbaugh, 2003; Etherington *et al*,
3799 2004a, 2004b). One approach to optimising the design of a monitoring programme is
3800 to assess how different choices for the type, number and time period of measurements
3801 affect uncertainties in assessed dose.

3802
3803

5.3 Categories of Monitoring Programmes

3804 (276) Four categories of monitoring programmes can (generally) be defined:
3805 *Routine monitoring* is performed where intakes by workers are probable in
3806 anytime during normal operations, or where accidental intakes could otherwise
3807 remain undetected.

3808 *Special monitoring* is performed after actual or suspected abnormal events.

3809 *Confirmatory monitoring* is carried out to demonstrate that working conditions
3810 are satisfactory, and that there is no need for routine individual monitoring. It could
3811 consist of occasional individual monitoring measurements.

3812 *Task-related monitoring* is carried out to provide information about a
3813 particular operation.

3814 (277) The four categories of monitoring are not mutually exclusive; in fact there can
3815 be considerable overlap. For example, an effective routine monitoring programme not
3816 only provides reliable data on individual worker exposures and doses, but can also be
3817 used to demonstrate that the work environment and work procedures are under
3818 satisfactory control.

3819 5.3.1 Routine Monitoring

3820 (278) Routine monitoring programmes may involve only one type of measurement
3821 or a combination of techniques, depending on the sensitivity that can be achieved. For
3822 some radionuclides, only one measurement technique is practical, *e.g.* urine
3823 monitoring for assessment of intakes of tritium. For radionuclides such as plutonium
3824 isotopes that present difficulties for both measurement and interpretation, various
3825 techniques may have to be employed. If different methods of adequate sensitivity are
3826 available, the general order of preference (highest first) in terms of accuracy of
3827 interpretation is:

- 3828 • body activity measurements;
- 3829 • excreta analysis;
- 3830 • exposure monitoring in the workplace.

3831 (279) These techniques are, in general, complementary and not mutually exclusive.
3832 For example, results of monitoring of the working environment (area monitoring) can
3833 provide early indication of worker exposure, and can therefore be used to trigger
3834 special bioassay monitoring, or they may provide information that assists in
3835 interpreting the results of individual monitoring, *e.g.* information on airborne activity,
3836 particle size, chemical form and solubility, and time of intake.

3837 (280) Urine monitoring provides a measure of systemic uptake to organs and tissues
3838 after inhalation and ingestion for those elements for which urine excretion rates are
3839 sufficiently high. It can also be used to determine the fraction of activity deposited in
3840 a wound site that transfers to the systemic circulation.

3841 (281) Caution should be exercised in using urine monitoring for materials that are
3842 absorbed relatively slowly from the respiratory tract (*i.e.* 'insoluble' materials). In
3843 these circumstances, it is usually the lung dose that makes the greatest contribution to
3844 effective dose, and uncertainties on the knowledge of the absorption characteristics of
3845 the material can result in significant errors in assessed dose. For insoluble materials,
3846 significant improvements in sensitivity can be achieved by using faecal monitoring in
3847 addition to urine monitoring. This is because significant fractions of insoluble
3848 material deposited in both the extrathoracic airways and the lungs are cleared via the
3849 gastro-intestinal tract to faeces.

3850 (282) Interpretation of faecal monitoring data needs to take account of a number of
3851 factors that are specific to the faecal excretion pathway. Excretion of faeces is a
3852 discrete process (even though it is usually modelled using first-order kinetics), and so
3853 it is advisable to sum the amounts excreted over a 3-day period to obtain a daily
3854 excretion rate.

3855 (283) In the workplace, individuals may be exposed to a variety of radionuclides,
3856 such as those that occur in fuel reprocessing or manufacturing plants. In such
3857 circumstances it may be feasible to use a radionuclide that is readily detectable to
3858 assess the potential for exposure to other radionuclides in the plant. For example
3859 screening for ^{144}Ce could be used to assess the potential for exposure to actinides
3860 (Doerfel et al, 2008).

3861 (284) The results of workplace monitoring for air contamination may sometimes be
3862 used to estimate individual intakes if individual monitoring is not feasible. However
3863 the interpretation of the results of air sampling measurements in terms of intake is
3864 subject to much greater uncertainty and bias.

3865 (285) The probability of exposure and the likely time pattern of intake are often
3866 dependent on the tasks being performed. For example, exposures may be chronic for
3867 workers in the mining industry. On the other hand, workers in nuclear power plants
3868 are not expected to receive significant intakes except in the rare event of an accident.

3869 (286) The required frequency of measurements in a routine monitoring programme
3870 depends upon the retention and excretion of the radionuclide and the sensitivity of the
3871 measurement techniques available. Selection of monitoring intervals should also take
3872 into account the probability of occurrence of an intake; where the risk of intake is
3873 high, the frequency of monitoring may need to be increased to reduce the uncertainty
3874 in the time of intake. The measurement technique should be selected so that
3875 uncertainties in the measured value are small in relation to the major sources of
3876 uncertainty.

3877 (287) For situations where an acute exposure situation may be expected, Publication
3878 78 (ICRP, 1997b) provides a simple rule that limits the possible error on the estimate
3879 of intake arising from the unknown time of exposure. Monitoring intervals are
3880 selected so that any underestimation introduced by the unknown time of intake is no
3881 more than a factor of three. In practice, this is a maximum underestimate because the
3882 actual distribution of the exposure in time is unknown. The error in assessed intake
3883 can take on both positive and negative values, depending on the probability
3884 distribution of the exposure over the monitoring interval, with the result that the mean
3885 value of any underestimate is less than a factor of three. However, if a substantial part
3886 of the intake occurs just before sampling or measurement, the intake could be
3887 overestimated by more than a factor of three. This may be particularly important in
3888 the case of excreta monitoring, since the fraction excreted each day may change
3889 rapidly with time in the period immediately following the intake.

3890 (288) An alternative, graphical approach has been developed by Stradling *et al*
3891 (2004), which takes into account uncertainties in material-specific parameters such as
3892 those describing absorption and particle size distribution, as well as time of intake.
3893 Information on the minimum detectable amount for a particular measurement
3894 technique is used to determine a monitoring interval appropriate for the dose level of
3895 interest.

3896 (289) When chronic exposures are expected, the monitoring programme should be
3897 chosen taking into consideration that the amount present in the body and in excreta
3898 will increase in time until equilibrium is reached. In each monitoring interval,
3899 measurements will reflect the activity accumulated in body organs as a result of
3900 chronic intakes received in earlier years. The monitoring programme should take into
3901 account the workers' assignment of duties. For certain radionuclides there may be a
3902 significant difference between measurements taken before and after the weekend, or
3903 before and after an absence from work.

3904

3905 **5.3.2 Confirmatory Monitoring**

3906 (290) One method of confirming that working conditions are satisfactory (typically
3907 for annual effective doses less than 1 mSv) is to carry out occasional individual
3908 monitoring. Unexpected findings would give grounds for further investigation.
3909 Confirmatory monitoring of this type is most useful for those radionuclides that are

3910 retained in the body for long periods; occasional measurements may be made to
3911 confirm the absence of build-up of activity within the body.

3912

3913 **5.3.3 Special or Task-Related Monitoring**

3914 (291) Monitoring in relation to a particular task or event may often involve a
3915 combination of techniques so as to make the best possible evaluation of a novel or
3916 unusual situation. Since both special and task-related monitoring relate to distinct
3917 events, either real or suspected, one of the problems encountered in interpretation of
3918 routine monitoring results does not apply, viz. the time of intake is known.
3919 Furthermore, there may be more specific information about the physical and chemical
3920 form of the contaminant.

3921 (292) In some cases of suspected incidents, screening techniques (such as measuring
3922 nose blow samples or nasal smears) may be employed to give a preliminary estimate
3923 of the seriousness of the incident. In these cases the regional deposition in the nose
3924 can be used to confirm that an intake has occurred and to give a rough estimate of the
3925 intake. Positive nasal swabs should trigger special bioassay measurements (Guilmette
3926 *et al.*, 2007).

3927 (293) If therapeutic procedures have been applied to enhance the rate of elimination
3928 of a radionuclide from the body then special monitoring may be needed to follow its
3929 retention in the body and to provide the basis for a dose assessment. In cases where
3930 treatment has been given, care must be taken in selecting the monitoring methods
3931 because normal biokinetics of the radionuclides can be altered significantly. For
3932 example Prussian Blue enhances the faecal elimination of radioisotopes of caesium
3933 and therefore faeces bioassay, although not used routinely, should be implemented in
3934 addition to *in vivo* and urine monitoring.

3935 (294) Following a cut or wound, some radioactive material may penetrate to
3936 subcutaneous tissue and hence be taken up by body fluids and distributed around the
3937 body. Depending upon the radionuclide(s) and the amount of activity it may be
3938 necessary to undertake a medical investigation and a programme of special
3939 monitoring. In these circumstances, the amount of radioactive material at the site of
3940 the wound should be determined taking into account self-attenuation of the radiation
3941 in the foreign material and in tissue, as an aid to decisions on the need for excision. If
3942 an attempt is made to remove material from the wound, measurements should be
3943 made of the activity recovered and remaining at the wound site, so as to maintain an
3944 activity balance. The excised material can also provide information on the isotopic
3945 ratios and physico-chemical composition which can inform the dose assessment. A
3946 series of further measurements may also be needed to determine any further uptake to
3947 blood and body tissues from which any additional committed effective dose can be
3948 calculated.

3949

3950 **5.4 Derived Investigation Levels**

3951 (295) In many situations of potential exposure to radionuclides, it is convenient to
3952 set derived investigation levels (DIL) for the quantities that are measured in
3953 monitoring programmes, *i.e.* whole body content, organ content, daily urinary or
3954 faecal excretion, activity concentration in air. The chosen value for the DIL may be

3955 directly related to the dose or to the intake. For example, an investigation could be
3956 based on an intake of a radionuclide that would give a committed effective dose of 1
3957 mSv. Thus in a routine monitoring programme for a single radionuclide and with a
3958 period of T days, a DIL could be based on the body content that would give a
3959 committed dose of 1 mSv. This would be appropriate where the probability of more
3960 than one intake occurring within a year is considered to be low. Where this
3961 probability is higher, and the probability of intake through the year is considered to be
3962 uniform, the DIL could be derived from a committed effective dose of $(T/365)$ mSv.

3963 (296) The value corresponding to the investigation level can be obtained directly
3964 from the relevant graphs or calculated from the tables of dose per unit content in the
3965 data sets given in this report series or the accompanying CD-ROMs. The use of
3966 constraints as described in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) could be used as a basis for
3967 setting investigation levels. In setting such investigation levels, due attention must be
3968 given to other sources of exposure, *i.e.* other radionuclides and external irradiation. In
3969 situations where intakes and doses are known to be low and there is considerable
3970 experience of the processes being undertaken, it may be possible simply to set
3971 investigation levels for the measured quantities on the basis of experience. A
3972 measurement result in excess of the investigation level would indicate a departure
3973 from normal conditions and the need to investigate further.

3974

3975

5.5 Record Keeping and Reporting

3976 (297) Dose record keeping is the making and keeping of individual dose records for
3977 radiation workers. It is an essential part of the process of monitoring the exposures of
3978 individuals to both external radiation and to intakes of radionuclides and for
3979 demonstrating compliance with dose limits and constraints. Formal procedures should
3980 be established for dose record keeping and these have been described in publications
3981 by the IAEA (IAEA, 1999b, 2004). The procedures and criteria for reporting
3982 individual and workplace monitoring results should be clearly specified by the
3983 management and/or regulatory authority. Information reported should be clearly
3984 identifiable and understandable and sufficient for the dose to be recalculated from the
3985 measurements at a later time if necessary. Included in the information to be
3986 documented must be a specification of the models, assumptions and computational
3987 codes used. In accident situations interim information will be needed to judge the
3988 need for management actions and the need for follow-up monitoring.

3989

3990

5.6 Quality Management System

3991 (298) The need for a quality management system (QMS) within an overall radiation
3992 protection programme has been discussed in an ISO standard (ISO, 2006). Reference
3993 should be made to the ISO standard for a complete account, but some of the more
3994 important issues are:

- 3995 • in deciding on the nature and extent of the quality assurance programme,
3996 consideration should be given to the number of workers monitored, and the
3997 magnitude and probability of exposures expected
- 3998 • assumptions on factors such as radionuclide composition, inhaled particle size,

3999 identity of chemical compounds, absorption behaviour, etc., should be verified
4000 by appropriate measurements
4001 • reviews or audits should be conducted at appropriate times (*e.g.* when a new
4002 monitoring programme is implemented, or when a significant change to a
4003 programme is made)
4004 (299) Laboratories should participate in national or international intercomparisons
4005 of measurements and dose assessments at appropriate intervals. Such participation
4006 enables the determination of the accuracy of measurement and dose assessment
4007 procedures, improves reliability, and facilitates harmonisation of methods.
4008

4009 6 GENERAL ASPECTS OF RETROSPECTIVE DOSE ASSESSMENT**4010 6.1 Introduction**

4011 (300) The effective dose calculated for protection purposes is determined from the
4012 equivalent doses to organs and tissues of the human body, which are in turn calculated
4013 from the mean absorbed doses to those organs and tissues (Section 1.2). Effective
4014 dose provides a value which takes account of the given exposure conditions but not of
4015 the characteristics of a specific individual. In particular, the tissue weighting factors
4016 that are used to determine effective dose are selected, rounded values representing
4017 averages over many individuals of different ages and both sexes. The equivalent doses
4018 to each organ or tissue of the Reference Male and the Reference Female are averaged,
4019 and these averaged doses are each multiplied with the corresponding tissue weighting
4020 factor to determine the sex-averaged effective dose for the Reference Person (ICRP,
4021 2007). It follows that effective dose does not provide an individual-specific dose but
4022 rather that for a Reference Person under given exposure conditions (ICRP, 2007).

4023 (301) There are two alternative approaches that may be applied for retrospective
4024 dose assessment:

4025
4026 a) The calculation of the intake of a radionuclide either from direct
4027 measurements (*e.g.*, measuring the activity of radionuclides in the whole body
4028 or in specific organs and tissues by external counting) and/or from indirect
4029 measurements (*e.g.*, measuring the activity of radionuclides in urine or faeces,
4030 or exposure monitoring in the workplace). Biokinetic models are used to
4031 interpret the measurements and the effective dose is calculated from the intake
4032 using reference dose coefficients (doses per unit intake, Sv Bq⁻¹)
4033 recommended by ICRP or determined using ICRP's recommended
4034 methodology (ICRP, 2007).

4035
4036 b) Calculation of the committed effective dose directly from the measurements
4037 using functions that relate them to the time of the intake. The measurements
4038 could be of whole body or organ content, activity in 24 hour urine or faecal
4039 samples, or concentration of radionuclides in air in the workplace. For the
4040 interpretation of bioassay data, this approach requires the use of tables of
4041 'dose per unit content' as a function of time after the intake (ICRP, 2007).
4042

4043 The two approaches are equivalent and should produce identical results provided the
4044 same biokinetic models, parameter values and assumptions are used.

4045 (302) 'Dose per unit content' tables for selected radionuclides are given in this
4046 report series and on the accompanying CD-ROMs. They provide data on the
4047 committed effective dose corresponding to values of bioassay quantities measured at
4048 specified times after an acute intake of the radionuclide. A more detailed description
4049 of the data provided is given in Section 7.3. The tables provide a simple and easy-to-
4050 use tool, which should promote harmonisation in the interpretation of bioassay data.

4051 (303) There may be some circumstances in which parameter values may be changed
4052 from the reference values in the calculation of effective dose. It is, therefore,

4053 important to distinguish between those reference parameter values that might be
4054 changed in the calculation of effective dose under particular circumstances of
4055 exposure and those values that cannot be changed under the definition of effective
4056 dose. As effective dose applies to a reference person, individual-specific parameter
4057 values should not be changed whereas material-specific parameter values may be
4058 changed. Examples of material-specific parameters include lung-to-blood absorption
4059 parameters, alimentary tract transfer factors and aerosol parameters such as the
4060 activity median aerodynamic diameter (AMAD) of the inhaled aerosol.

4061 (304) In the majority of cases, assessed doses are low in comparison to dose limits,
4062 and for such cases it is likely that dose assessments will make use of the
4063 recommended default values for material-specific parameters, the tabulated dose
4064 coefficients and the 'dose per unit content' tables that accompany this report series.
4065 Where assessed doses are likely to be greater, or where more than one monitoring
4066 method has been used and a number of monitoring measurements have been made,
4067 material-specific parameter values other than the recommended defaults may be used.

4068 (305) In carrying out retrospective assessments of doses from monitoring data, the
4069 assessor may need to make assumptions about factors such as the pattern of intake
4070 and properties of the material because of lack of specific information on these factors.
4071 A European project in the EC 5th Framework Programme was established to give
4072 general guidelines for the estimation of committed dose from incorporation
4073 monitoring data (Project IDEAS). The project developed a structured approach to the
4074 interpretation of individual monitoring data (Doerfel *et al*, 2006, 2007), building on
4075 the proposals made by the ICRP Working Party on Dose Assessment (Fry *et al*,
4076 2003). This guidance has been developed further by the European Radiation
4077 Dosimetry Group (EURADOS) (Lopez *et al*, 2011b; Marsh *et al*, 2008).

4078 (306) In addition to this guidance, the International Organization for Standardization
4079 (ISO) has published an International Standard, ISO 27048:2011 (ISO, 2011) that
4080 specifies the minimum requirements for internal dose assessment for the monitoring
4081 of workers. The IDEAS guidelines and ISO 27048 both adopt the principle that the
4082 effort needed for dose assessment should broadly correspond to the anticipated level
4083 of exposure.

4084 (307) In unusual cases where doses to specified individuals may substantially
4085 exceed dose limits, the committed effective dose can only provide a first approximate
4086 measure of the overall detriment. If radiation dose and risk need to be assessed in a
4087 more accurate way, further specific estimates of organ or tissue doses are necessary,
4088 especially if organ-specific risks for the specified individuals are needed. In such
4089 cases, absorbed dose to organs should be calculated and used with the most
4090 appropriate biological effectiveness and risk factor data (ICRP, 2007). This
4091 retrospective individual dose assessment should only be performed by professionals
4092 with recognised expertise, skills and practical experience. It is beyond the scope of
4093 this publication to give advice on how to perform individualized retrospective dose
4094 and risk assessments.

4095 (308) This Chapter discusses the information that should be collected on the
4096 exposure, summarises approaches to data handling for single or multiple
4097 measurements, and discusses uncertainties associated with internal dose assessments,

4098 including measurement uncertainties. Two types of analysis are discussed: reference
4099 evaluation and site-specific evaluation.

4100
4101

6.2 Types of Analysis

4102 6.2.1 Basic evaluation with ICRP default biokinetic and dosimetric 4103 computational models

4104 (309) For installations and tasks where the annual committed effective doses to
4105 workers from intakes of radionuclides assessed prospectively are low (not likely to
4106 exceed 1 mSv), the half-life of the radionuclides that are handled are short and the
4107 quantity of material present is limited, internal monitoring might be carried out to
4108 demonstrate compliance or may be established for other purposes. For workers in
4109 those installations, there is *generally* no need to evaluate the results of monitoring
4110 measurements using site-specific or material-specific parameters. A typical example
4111 is a nuclear medicine service. If required by the Authorities, the bioassay monitoring
4112 of the technical staff, medical doctors and nurses will be accomplished, using ICRP
4113 standard models, without the need for workplace characterization (*e.g.* the
4114 determination of AMAD). Other examples might include university or research
4115 laboratories using trace quantities of radioisotopes.

4116 (310) For such routine operations, where a new intake has been confirmed, a
4117 reference evaluation may be carried out with the following default assumptions:

- 4118 • The intake was an acute event at the mid-point of the monitoring interval.
- 4119 • The exposure was via inhalation of material with an AMAD of 5 μm .
- 4120 • Absorption and f_A values: the absorption Type or the default specific
4121 absorption parameter values for the known material are as described in this
4122 document. If the compound is unknown, then for those elements where there is
4123 a choice of absorption Types, the Type for 'unspecified compounds' should be
4124 used.

4125 (311) Alternatively, where site-specific or material-specific default values are
4126 available and documented, these may be used provided that they are shown to be
4127 appropriate for the process in which the worker was engaged.

4128 (312) If the value of committed effective dose is confirmed to be less than a
4129 previous established low value (*e.g.* 1 mSv), no further evaluation is necessary.

4130
4131

6.2.2 Detailed evaluation of doses

4132 (313) At installations where workers have the potential to be exposed to doses
4133 higher than 1 mSv, or higher than the derived investigation level (*e.g.* in situations
4134 such as the loss of control of the source), information should be gathered on the
4135 physical and chemical characteristics of the inhaled or ingested radionuclide, as part
4136 of a workplace monitoring programme, and on the time and pattern of intake. This
4137 information may be used to refine the assessment and reduce uncertainties in the
4138 assessed dose. The types of information that may be used in such an assessment are
4139 discussed in section 6.4.

4140

4141

6.3 Understanding Exposure Situations

4142 (314) Workplace information should be gathered in order to understand the
4143 exposure situations, *e.g.* radionuclides that may have been incorporated (including
4144 equilibrium assumptions for the natural series), chemical form, presumed particle
4145 size, likely time, pattern and pathway of any intake.

4146

6.3.1 Time(s) and Pattern of Intake

4148 (315) A principal source of uncertainty in the interpretation of bioassay data is the
4149 assignment of the time(s) and pattern of intake. Since the bioassay function that gives
4150 the predicted measurement depends on the time since the intake it follows that the
4151 estimate of intake will vary, depending on when it is assumed the intake took place.
4152 Consideration should be given to different possible patterns of intake, such as a single
4153 contamination event, several individual events during the monitoring period, intakes
4154 lasting a short period of time or chronic intakes.

4155 (316) Where chronic intakes are expected, an assessment should be made as to
4156 whether the working schedule should be taken into account when selecting the time of
4157 measurement (or sampling), and interpreting the results from bioassay monitoring.
4158 For elements where a fraction of the intake is rapidly excreted, the times and duration
4159 of periods when no exposure could take place such as the weekend, days off or
4160 vacations could strongly influence the assessed intake. With the exception of short
4161 half-life radionuclides, the selection of a measurement or sampling time immediately
4162 following such a period will reduce the uncertainty in assessed intake associated with
4163 rapid excretion.

4164 (317) For routine monitoring, when chronic exposures are not expected, it is
4165 necessary to estimate an intake from a measurement made at the end of a monitoring
4166 interval, often without knowing the time of intake.

4167 (318) When a positive measurement appears from a routine bioassay programme, a
4168 the review of workplace monitoring data, such as airborne or surface contamination
4169 levels, can indicate a likely time for the intake to have occurred. Similarly, if other
4170 workers in the same workplace have exhibited positive routine bioassay samples, a
4171 review of the data and monitoring schedules for those individual workers will help
4172 determine the time of intake for all. Workers interviews should elucidate whether if
4173 an incident, an unusual procedure or equipment failure could have led to the intake.
4174 Follow-up bioassay should be scheduled to confirm the positive measurement. When
4175 several bioassay results are available, perhaps including different types of
4176 measurement, a comparison of these results with the intake retention fractions tables
4177 may help in narrowing the choice of the time the intake occurred.

4178 (319) Another approach has been described by Miller *et al* (2002) in which
4179 Bayesian-based dosimetry calculations are performed using a Markov chain Monte
4180 Carlo algorithm. This method, which analyzes all available bioassay data
4181 simultaneously, determines probabilistically the number, magnitude and times for N
4182 possible intakes using a previously agreed set of biokinetic models. The Weighted
4183 Likelihood Monte Carlo Sampling (WeLMoS) method is another Bayesian technique
4184 (Puncher and Birchall, 2008). In this approach, biokinetic model parameters and times
4185 of intake are sampled from probability distributions that express the state of

4186 knowledge about the exposure before bioassay data are obtained. Each sample is
4187 weighted by the appropriate likelihood function for a given intake to produce a
4188 quantity termed the 'weighted likelihood'. The probability of each intake and time of
4189 intake, given the observed measurement data, is calculated from the weighted
4190 likelihoods using simple numerical integration techniques. These methods, although
4191 computationally intensive, obviate the need to assume intake times when other types
4192 of circumstantial information are absent.

4193 (320) In Publications 54 and 78 (ICRP, 1988a, 1997b), it is argued that in the
4194 absence of any information, the time of intake is equally likely to have occurred
4195 before the mid-point of the monitoring interval, than after it, and therefore suggests
4196 that in these situations, a value of $t=T/2$ should be used, *i.e.* the intake is assumed to
4197 have occurred at the mid-point of the monitoring interval. Alternative approaches
4198 have been suggested (Strom 2003; Puncher *et al*, 2006; Birchall *et al*, 2007; Marsh *et*
4199 *al*, 2008). However the results of these alternative approaches, in most circumstances,
4200 differ very little from the mid-point method. The mid-point method is recommended
4201 here for reference evaluations (Section 6.2.1).

4202

4203 **6.3.2 Route of Intake**

4204 (321) Although intakes by inhalation alone are the most frequent in the workplace,
4205 intakes by ingestion and uptake through wounds and intact skin cannot be excluded. If
4206 the route of intake is not known and several bioassay results are available, including
4207 different types of bioassay measurements, a comparison of these results may help in
4208 determining it. In some facilities simultaneous intakes by several routes can occur.

4209 (322) If the radionuclide activity can be assessed by direct measurements, lung
4210 counting can be used to differentiate between inhaled and ingested material. However,
4211 if this is not possible and the radionuclide is in an insoluble form, interpretation of
4212 activities excreted in faecal and urine samples in terms of intake is quite problematic.
4213 Both the ingested material and the inhaled material deposited in the upper respiratory
4214 tract will clear through the faeces in the first few days after intake. Consequently, it is
4215 important to initiate excreta sampling as soon as possible after an acute intake,
4216 continuing for an extended period. Material in the faeces after the second week will
4217 originate mainly from the respiratory tract, and so later measurements can be used to
4218 correct the earlier faecal sample measurements for this component. In the monitoring
4219 of workers chronically exposed to long-lived, insoluble radionuclides, activities in the
4220 faeces after a 15 days absence from work will mostly reflect the delayed clearance
4221 from inhaled material, which dominates the dose (IAEA, 1999, 2004). Intakes of
4222 radioactive materials through wounds may occur as a result of accidents. A summary
4223 of the wound model developed by NCRP (NCRP, 2007) is presented in Section 3.4.

4224

4225 **6.3.3 Particle Size**

4226 (323) Radionuclides can become airborne through numerous processes and can be
4227 present in various physical forms such as gases, vapours, and particles with a wide
4228 range of sizes, shapes and densities. Most aerosols are composed of particles with
4229 complex shapes and varying particle sizes (NCRP, 2010). For modelling purposes in
4230 dose calculations, ICRP advises the use of the activity median aerodynamic diameter

4231 (AMAD) which, together with the geometric standard deviation, describes the particle
4232 size distribution of the inhaled aerosol (ICRP, 2002b). The AMAD influences
4233 deposition in the respiratory tract and as a consequence the transfer of unabsorbed
4234 particles to the GI tract.

4235 (324) The AMAD of the airborne contamination in the workplace may be
4236 characterised as part of a workplace monitoring programme. In some working
4237 environments more than one particle size distribution mode may be detected. In cases
4238 of accidental releases of material, information on the particle size distribution of the
4239 airborne fraction of the release should be obtained whenever possible. When the size
4240 distribution of the radioactive aerosol is not known, then default value of 5 μm
4241 AMAD for occupational exposures should be used (ICRP, 1994a, 2002a).

4242

4243 **6.3.4 Chemical Composition**

4244 (325) The chemical form of the intake can have a significant effect on the behaviour
4245 of the radionuclide that has entered the body. Chemical forms commonly encountered
4246 in the working environment are given in subsequent reports in this series for selected
4247 radionuclides. Where there is adequate experimental data, chemical forms are
4248 assigned to one of the default absorption Types (F, M or S), and a value for the
4249 alimentary tract transfer factor, f_A , is assigned. In some special cases, material-specific
4250 values for the parameters describing absorption to blood are provided (Section 3.2.3).

4251 (326) A compound might have absorption characteristics slightly or considerably
4252 different from those of the default. The interpretation of bioassay measurements is
4253 sensitive to the choice of absorption parameter values of the inhaled radioactive
4254 material. In cases of significant intakes of radionuclides, and in an accident situation,
4255 it may be necessary to obtain specific data on the chemical form of the radionuclide(s)
4256 involved to obtain a more realistic assessment of the intake and committed effective
4257 dose. However the gathering of additional source-term information takes time, and
4258 often will not be available soon after the incident/accident. The specific/reference
4259 ICRP lung absorption parameter and f_A of the chemical form that most closely
4260 describes the release material should be used in the first dose calculations, following
4261 the first monitoring results. Follow-up bioassay monitoring and further investigations
4262 of the accident should be used to confirm or modify the results of the first dose
4263 calculations.

4264 (327) In many situations the worker is exposed to several chemical forms of the
4265 same radionuclide. Workers exposed in different areas of a uranium enrichment
4266 facility, for example, might be exposed to different chemical forms of uranium.
4267 Interpretation of bioassay results, excreta results in particular, will rely heavily on the
4268 assumptions related to the contributions of the different chemical forms to these
4269 results.

4270

4271 **6.3.5 Influence of Background**

4272 (328) Radionuclides from the three natural radioactive decay series and other natural
4273 and anthropogenic sources are present in all environmental media, and thus are also
4274 contained in foodstuffs, drinking water and in the air, leading to intakes by human
4275 populations. Their presence should be taken into account when interpreting bioassay

4276 measurements. The *in vivo* detection capability and minimum detection levels of *in*
4277 *in vivo* counting are strongly influenced by the presence of ^{40}K in the body.

4278 (329) Excretion data from uranium and thorium series radionuclides may need
4279 correction for dietary intakes. A 'blank' bioassay sample should be obtained from the
4280 workers, prior to the commencement of work. When not possible, bioassay samples
4281 from family members or from the population living in the same area should be taken
4282 and analyzed, to allow natural or non-occupational intakes and occupational intakes to
4283 be distinguished (Lipsztein *et al*, 2003; Lipsztein *et al*, 2001; Eckerman and Kerr,
4284 1999). In cases of positive excreta results resulting from occupational exposures, the
4285 background values should be subtracted from the monitoring results, before dose
4286 calculations. This might not be simple, especially when dealing with faeces
4287 monitoring results. Little *et al* (2007) describe a Bayesian method to identify a typical
4288 excretion rate of uranium for each individual in the absence of occupational intakes.

4289 (330) In addition it is important to evaluate the influence of radiopharmaceuticals
4290 that may have been administered for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes.

4291 (331) For long lived radionuclides, bioassay monitoring results might carry the
4292 influence of intakes identified in preceding monitoring intervals. The retained activity
4293 in the body from previous intakes should be taken into account.

4294

4295 6.3.6 Special monitoring situations

4296 (332) In many situations exposure will be to a single radionuclide or a limited
4297 number of radionuclides. For some elements, however, exposures may involve a
4298 number of isotopes with different decay properties. Uranium and plutonium illustrate
4299 the potential for exposure to complex mixtures. Various plutonium isotopes are
4300 present in the nuclear industry. Studies have shown a significant difference in isotopic
4301 behaviour of plutonium, due to differences in specific activity (Guilmette *et al*, 1992).
4302 Workers exposed to uranium are always exposed to a mix of isotopes, in different
4303 proportions depending on the enrichment level. Knowledge of the enrichment is
4304 essential for the correct interpretation of bioassay monitoring results.

4305 (333) Special considerations apply when direct bioassay measurements of
4306 radioactive progeny are used to determine the body content of the parent radionuclide
4307 (Section 3.2.3). Significant errors can arise if it is assumed that the progeny are
4308 always in secular equilibrium. For example, the activity of ^{232}Th in the lungs can be
4309 underestimated when determined from direct measurements of its ^{228}Ac , ^{212}Pb , ^{212}Bi
4310 and ^{208}Tl progeny. Differences in lung retention among the measured element and the
4311 radionuclide of concern contribute to the uncertainty of results. For the same reasons,
4312 activity of ^{232}Th in the lungs can be underestimated when determined from
4313 measurements of ^{220}Rn in breath.

4314 (334) There are also situations when one radionuclide is used as a surrogate for
4315 another, for example for *in vivo* bioassay monitoring. One example is the
4316 determination of the level of internally deposited Pu in the lung which is often
4317 estimated on the basis of ^{241}Am external monitoring of the chest. ^{241}Am generally
4318 accompanies Pu in the work place or is produced in the body by decay of ^{241}Pu . This
4319 procedure is often appropriate but depending on the solubility characteristics and
4320 isotopic composition of the aerosols, the relative clearance rates from the lung might

4321 be different and ²⁴¹Am lung results may underestimate Pu activity in the lung (*e.g.*
 4322 nitrate aerosols).

4323
 4324

6.4 Measurements

4325 6.4.1 Data Collection and Processing

4326 (335) Some types of measurement data may need processing before use. Examples
 4327 include:

- 4328 • Lung. Generally, the combined activity in lungs and thoracic lymph nodes is
 4329 referred to as ‘lung’ activity, and it is this quantity that is calculated by internal
 4330 dosimetry software. Where estimates of lung and lymph activity are given
 4331 separately, they should be summed. ‘Chest’ measurements may also include
 4332 counts from activity in liver and skeleton for radionuclides that concentrate in
 4333 these tissues and their contributions will be needed to be subtracted.
- 4334 • Urine and faecal samples collected over periods less than 24 hours should in
 4335 general be normalized to an equivalent 24 hour value. This can be achieved by
 4336 multiplying by the ratio of the reference 24 hour excretion volume or mass to
 4337 the volume or mass of the sample. The reference volumes, for males and
 4338 females respectively, are: for urine 1.6 litres and 1.2 litres; and for faeces 150 g
 4339 and 120 g (ICRP, 2002a). For urine sampling, another widely used method is
 4340 to normalise to the amount of creatinine excreted per day; 1.7 g and 1.0 g for
 4341 males and females respectively (ICRP, 2002a). If the 24 hour sample is less
 4342 than 500 ml for urine or less than 60 g for faeces, then it is doubtful that it has
 4343 been collected over a full 24 hour period and normalization should be
 4344 considered. Collection of faecal samples should preferentially cover a period
 4345 of about three days, as the transit time through the alimentary tract is subject to
 4346 large inter (and intra-) subject variations.

4347 (336) For some radionuclides the collection of spot samples are sufficient for
 4348 routine sampling, *e.g.* the monitoring of intakes of tritiated water.

4349
 4350

6.4.2 Single Measurements, Acute Intakes

4351 *Special monitoring*

4352 (337) For special or task-related monitoring when the time of intake is known, the
 4353 intake can be estimated from the measured results using the $m(t)$ values given in
 4354 subsequent reports of this series. An $m(t)$ value is a value of a bioassay quantity
 4355 measured at time t after a unit intake of a specified radionuclide, sometimes known as
 4356 a retention or excretion function. If only a single measurement is made, the intake, I ,
 4357 can be determined from the measured quantity, M , if the contribution of previous
 4358 intakes to the measured quantity M is negligible.

$$4359 \quad I = \frac{M}{m(t)} \quad (6.1)$$

4360 (338) The intake should be multiplied by the dose coefficient (e_{ij} , for pathway i and
 4361 radionuclide j) to obtain the committed effective dose E :

$$4362 \quad E(50) = e_{ij} \times I \quad (6.2)$$

4363 (339) Care must be taken to ensure that the measurement result, M , and $m(t)$ are
 4364 comparable; for example, in the case of urinalysis, the bioassay result must be
 4365 expressed as the total activity in a 24 hour urine sample at the end of collection (not at
 4366 analysis). Alternatively, the tabulated values of ‘Dose per unit content’ for a range of
 4367 radionuclides and types of materials should be used. Dose per unit content, $z(t)$, is
 4368 given by:

$$z(t) = e(50) / m(t) \quad (6.3)$$

4370 (340) If only a single measurement is made, and the contribution of previous intakes
 4371 to the measured quantity M is negligible, the committed effective dose $E(50)$,
 4372 associated with the intake, I , can be determined by:

$$E(50) = M \times z(t) \quad (6.4)$$

4374 **Routine monitoring**

4375 (341) For routine monitoring, an intake during the monitoring period is assessed
 4376 from the measurement made at the end of the monitoring interval. When the time of
 4377 intake is not known (or cannot easily be determined) and a reference evaluation is
 4378 being performed (Section 6.2.1), it should be assumed that the intake occurred at the
 4379 mid-point of the monitoring interval of T days. For a given measured quantity, M ,
 4380 obtained at the end of the monitoring interval, the intake is:

$$I = \frac{M}{m(T/2)} \quad (6.5)$$

4382 where $m(T/2)$ is the predicted value of the measured quantity for a unit intake
 4383 assumed to have occurred at the mid-point of the monitoring interval. The dose
 4384 from the intake in the monitoring interval is obtained by multiplying the intake by
 4385 the dose coefficient. The assessed dose or intake can be compared with the pro-rata
 4386 fraction of the dose limit or of the intake corresponding to that limit, respectively.
 4387 Alternatively, the dose or intake can be compared with predetermined investigation
 4388 levels.

4389 (342) An intake in a preceding monitoring interval may influence the measurement
 4390 result obtained. For a series of measurements in a routine monitoring programme, the
 4391 following procedure may be followed:

- 4392 • Determine the magnitude of the intake in the first monitoring interval.
- 4393 • Predict the contribution to each of the subsequent measurements from this
 4394 intake.
- 4395 • Subtract the corresponding contributions from all subsequent data if the
 4396 contributions are judged to be significant (ISO, 2011)
- 4397 • Repeat above for the next monitoring interval.

4398 (343) Alternatively, using the tables of dose per unit content, for a given measured
 4399 quantity M , obtained at the end of the monitoring interval, the *mid-point dose* E
 4400 associated with intake I is:

$$E = M \times z(T/2) \quad (6.6)$$

4402 (344) It is convenient to assume that for each monitoring interval n the associated
 4403 effective dose E_n could be equal to 0 or positive. For a given measured quantity,
 4404 $M(t_k)$, obtained at the end of the last monitoring interval k , the associated effective
 4405 dose E_k is:

4406
$$E_k = \left(M(t_k) - \sum_{n=1}^{k-1} \frac{E_n}{z(t_k - \tau_n)} \right) z(t_k - \tau_k) \quad (6.7)$$

4407 where t_k is the time of measurement k (end of the last monitoring interval k); τ_n and
 4408 τ_k are the time at mid-points of monitoring intervals n and k , respectively. If $M(t_k)$
 4409 is below the decision threshold (ISO, 2011) or the result of background subtraction
 4410 is negative, then $E_k = 0$.

4411 **6.4.3 Multiple Measurements**

4412 (345) Usually, the bioassay data for an intake estimate will consist of results for
 4413 different measurements performed at different times, and even from different
 4414 monitoring techniques, *e.g.* direct and indirect measurements.

4415 (346) To determine the best estimate of a single intake, when the time of intake is
 4416 known, it is first necessary to calculate the predicted values, $m(t_i)$, for unit intake of
 4417 the measured quantities. It is then required to determine the best estimate of the
 4418 intake, I , such that the product $I m(t_i)$ ‘best fits’ the measurement data (t_i, M_i) . In cases
 4419 where multiple types of bioassay data sets are available, it is recommended to assess
 4420 the intake and dose by fitting predicted values to the different types of measurement
 4421 data simultaneously. For example, if urine and faecal data sets are available then, the
 4422 intake is assessed by fitting appropriately-weighted predicted values to both data sets
 4423 simultaneously (ISO, 2011; Doerfel *et al*, 2006, 2007).

4424 (347) Numerous statistical methods for data fitting are available (IAEA, 2004a,b).
 4425 The two methods that are most widely applicable are the maximum likelihood method
 4426 (ISO, 2011; Doerfel *et al*, 2006) and the Bayesian approach (Miller *et al*, 2002;
 4427 Puncher and Birchall, 2008). Other methods such as the mean of the point estimates
 4428 and the least-squares fit can be justified on the basis of the maximum likelihood
 4429 method for certain assumptions on the error associated with the data. For example, the
 4430 least squares method can be derived from the maximum likelihood method if it is
 4431 assumed that the uncertainty on the data can be characterised by a normal distribution.
 4432 The assumed distribution (*e.g.* normal or lognormal) can have a dramatic influence on
 4433 the assessed intake and dose if the model is a poor fit to the data. However, as the fit
 4434 of the model to the data improves, the influence of the data uncertainties on the
 4435 assessed intake and dose reduces.

4436
 4437 **6.4.4 Chronic Exposures**

4438 (348) The amount of activity present in the body and the amount excreted daily
 4439 depend on the period of time over which the individual has been exposed. The
 4440 bioassay result obtained, *e.g.* the amount present in the body, in body organs, or in
 4441 excreta, will reflect the super-position of all the intakes. Intake retention functions for

4442 chronic intakes are not given in this publication, but equilibrium values of bioassay
4443 quantities for continuous chronic exposure are provided for some radionuclides.

4444

4445 **6.4.5 Influence of decorporation therapy**

4446 (349) In cases involving internal contamination, blocking, dilution, or chelating
4447 agents may be used to enhance the clearance of the activity from the body and reduce
4448 committed doses. The use of interventional techniques to enhance the body's natural
4449 elimination rate of the compound, or possibly to block the uptake of the radionuclide
4450 in sites where high uptake may occur (*e.g.*, radioiodine in the thyroid), may partially
4451 or completely invalidate the use of standardized model approaches described above to
4452 estimate the intake and dose (NCRP, 2009).

4453 (350) The use of chelating agents such as DTPA, for example, may influence
4454 excretion rates for weeks or months after cessation of treatment.

4455 (351) It is not feasible to give specific advice as the treatment of any bioassay data
4456 depends upon the circumstances of the exposure and the need and timescale required
4457 for the dose assessment.

4458

4459 **6.4.6 Wounds**

4460 (352) Because of their nature, intakes of radionuclides resulting from contaminated
4461 cuts or wounds typically account for an appreciable proportion of high dose
4462 exposures. Radionuclides may be transferred from the wound site to blood and to
4463 other organs and tissues, and the NCRP has developed a model to describe this
4464 transfer for various chemical forms of selected radionuclides (NCRP, 2007). Coupled
4465 with an element-specific systemic biokinetic model, the NCRP model can be used to
4466 calculate committed doses to organs and tissues and committed effective doses
4467 following transfer of the radionuclide to the blood and systemic circulation, as well as
4468 to predict urinary and faecal excretion.

4469 (353) As noted in Section 3.1, the assessment of internal contamination resulting
4470 from wounds is in practice treated on a case-by-case basis using expert judgement. In
4471 many cases, the amount of a radionuclide transferred from a wound site to blood may
4472 be assessed directly from urine bioassay data. Section 3.4 summarises the main
4473 features of the NCRP model, since this information may be of use in the interpretation
4474 of bioassay data for individual cases of wound contamination.

4475

4476 **6.5 Uncertainties in Internal Dose Assessment Based on Bioassay**

4477 (354) Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) makes the following statement with respect to
4478 the assessment of uncertainties:

4479

4480 *In order to assess radiation doses, models are necessary to simulate the*
4481 *geometry of the external exposure, the biokinetics of incorporated*
4482 *radionuclides, and the human body. The reference models and necessary*
4483 *reference parameter values are established and selected from a range of*
4484 *experimental investigations and human studies through judgements. For*
4485 *regulatory purposes, these models and parameter values are fixed by*

4486 *convention and are not subject to uncertainty.*

4487

4488 (355) It follows that there is no requirement to assess or record the uncertainty
4489 associated with an individual dose assessment performed to demonstrate compliance
4490 with regulatory requirements. Nevertheless, the assessment of uncertainties associated
4491 with a specified monitoring procedure (including the dose assessment procedure)
4492 provides important information for optimising the design of a monitoring programme
4493 (Etherington *et al*, 2004a; Etherington *et al*, 2004b; ISO, 2011). Where uncertainties
4494 in assessed effective dose are evaluated, uncertainties in material-specific model
4495 parameter values should be considered, but individual-specific model parameter
4496 values should be taken to be fixed at their reference values (Section 6.1).

4497 (356) This section describes and discusses the important sources of uncertainty in
4498 retrospective assessments of dose. The uncertainty in an internal dose assessment
4499 based on bioassay data depends on the uncertainties associated with measurements
4500 used to determine the activity of a radionuclide *in vivo* or in a biological sample,
4501 uncertainties in the exposure scenario used to interpret the bioassay results, and
4502 uncertainties in the biokinetic and dosimetric models used to interpret the bioassay
4503 results. The exposure scenario includes factors such as the route of intake, the time
4504 pattern of intake, the specific radionuclide(s) taken into the body, and the chemical
4505 and physical form of the deposited radionuclide(s).

4506

4507 **6.5.1 Uncertainties in Measurements**

4508 (357) Uncertainties in measurements of activity in the body or in biological samples
4509 have been discussed in IAEA publications (IAEA, 1996a, 2000). There are no
4510 standard procedures for indirect or direct bioassay measurements, although some
4511 examples of bioassay methods are given in these reports and elsewhere. The choice of
4512 the procedure, detector or facility will depend on the specific needs such as the
4513 nuclides of interest, minimum detectable activities, and budget. All procedures used
4514 to quantify the activity of a radionuclide are sources of both random and systematic
4515 errors. Uncertainties in measurements are typically due mainly to counting statistics,
4516 validity of the calibration procedures, possible contamination of the source or the
4517 measurement system, and random fluctuations in background. A committee of the
4518 U.S. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (NCRP) has
4519 developed a comprehensive report on uncertainties in internal radiation dose
4520 assessment that addresses measurement uncertainties in great detail (NCRP, 2010).

4521 (358) The total uncertainty associated with a measurement is generally expressed as
4522 an interval within which the value of the measure and is believed to lie with a
4523 specified level of confidence (EURACHEM/CITAC, 2000). In estimating the overall
4524 uncertainty in a measurement, it may be necessary to take each source of uncertainty
4525 and treat it separately to obtain the contribution from that source. Each of the separate
4526 contributions to uncertainty is referred to as an uncertainty component.

4527 (359) The components of uncertainty in a quantity may be divided into two main
4528 categories referred to as Type A and Type B uncertainties (BIPM *et al*, 2010;
4529 EURACHEM/CITAC, 2000; Cox and Harris, 2004; NCRP, 2010). Essentially, a
4530 Type A component is one that is evaluated by a statistical analysis of the variability in
4531 a set of observations, and a Type B component is one that is evaluated by other

4532 means, generally by scientific judgment using all relevant information available. In
4533 the case of a measurement of activity in the total body or in a biological sample, Type
4534 A uncertainties are generally taken as those that arise only from counting statistics and
4535 can be described by the Poisson distribution, while Type B components of uncertainty
4536 are taken as those associated with all other sources of uncertainty.

4537 (360) Examples of Type B components for *in vitro* measurements include the
4538 quantification of the sample volume or weight; errors in dilution and pipetting;
4539 evaporation of solution in storage; stability and activity of standards used for
4540 calibration; similarity of chemical yield between tracer and radioelement of interest;
4541 blank corrections; background radionuclide excretion contributions and fluctuations;
4542 electronic stability; spectroscopy resolution and peak overlap; contamination of
4543 sample and impurities; source positioning for counting; density and shape variation
4544 from calibration model and assumptions about homogeneity in calibration (Skrable *et al.*,
4545 1994). These uncertainties apply to the measurement of activity in the sample.
4546 With excretion measurements, the activity in the sample is used to provide an
4547 estimate of the subject's average excretion rate over 24 hours for comparison with the
4548 model predictions. If the samples are collected over periods less than 24 hours then
4549 they should be normalised to an equivalent 24 hour value. This introduces additional
4550 sources of Type B uncertainty relating to biological (inter-and intra-subject)
4551 variability and sampling procedures, which may well be greater than the uncertainty
4552 in the measured sample activity. Sampling protocols can be designed to minimize the
4553 sampling uncertainty, as shown by Sun *et al* (1993) for plutonium urinalysis and
4554 Moeller and Sun (2006) for indoor radon exposure.

4555 (361) *In vivo* measurements can be performed in different geometries (whole body
4556 measurements, and organ or site-specific measurement such as measurement over the
4557 lung, thyroid, skull, or liver, or over a wound. Each type of geometry needs
4558 specialized detector systems and calibration methods. The IAEA (1996a) and the
4559 ICRU (2003) have published reviews of direct bioassay methods that include
4560 discussions of sensitivity and accuracy of the measurements.

4561 (362) Examples of Type B components for *in vivo* monitoring include counting
4562 geometry errors; positioning of the individual in relation to the detector and
4563 movement of the person during counting; chest wall thickness determination;
4564 differences between the phantom and the individual or organ being measured,
4565 including geometric characteristics, density, distribution of the radionuclide within the
4566 body and organ and linear attenuation coefficient; interference from radioactive
4567 material deposits in adjacent body regions; spectroscopy resolution and peak overlap;
4568 electronic stability; interference from other radionuclides; variation in background
4569 radiation; activity of the standard radionuclide used for calibration; surface external
4570 contamination of the person; interference from natural radioactive elements present in
4571 the body; and calibration source uncertainties (IAEA, 1996a; Skrable *et al.*, 1994).

4572 (363) For partial body measurements it is generally difficult to interpret the result in
4573 terms of activity in a specific organ because radiation from other regions of the body
4574 may be detected. Interpretation of such measurements requires assumptions
4575 concerning the biokinetics of the radionuclide and any radioactive progeny produced
4576 *in vivo*. An illustration using ^{241}Am is given in the IAEA Safety Series Report on
4577 Direct Methods for Measuring Radionuclides in the Human Body (IAEA, 1996a). A

4578 fundamental assumption made in calibrating a lung measurement system is that the
4579 deposition of radioactivity in the lung is homogeneous, but depositions rarely follow
4580 this pattern. The distribution of the particles in the lung is a function of particle size,
4581 breathing rate, and health of the subject (Kramer and Hauck, 1999; Kramer *et al*,
4582 2000).

4583 (364) Measurement errors associated with counting statistics (Type A uncertainties)
4584 decrease with increasing activity or with increasing counting time, whereas the Type
4585 B components of measurement uncertainty may be largely independent of the activity
4586 or the counting time. Therefore, when activity levels are low and close to the limit of
4587 detection, the total uncertainty is often dominated by the Type A component (*i.e.* by
4588 counting statistics). For radionuclides that are easily detected and present in sufficient
4589 quantity, the total uncertainty is often dominated by the Type B components (*i.e.* by
4590 uncertainties other than counting statistics).

4591

4592 **6.5.2 Uncertainty in the Exposure Scenario**

4593 ***Time of Intake***

4594 (365) The uncertainty in the time pattern of intake can be the dominant source of
4595 uncertainty in the estimated dose, or it can make or little or no contribution to it. For
4596 example, if an intake is not recognised for some time after an incident and total body
4597 retention and urinary and faecal excretion rates diminish quickly, the assumed time
4598 pattern of intake could be the dominant uncertainty in the dose estimate. On the other
4599 hand, if a worker is exposed in the vicinity of an immediately recognised accidental
4600 release, or total body retention and excretion rates are fairly constant, the time pattern
4601 of intake may be a negligible source of uncertainty in the dose estimate.

4602 (366) In the case of routine monitoring, the intake can be assigned as being at the
4603 mid-point of the monitoring interval, or the intakes corresponding to each possible
4604 intake time can be calculated and then averaged. Either method may result in a large
4605 uncertainty in the dose estimate. Puncher *et al* (2006) and Birchall *et al* (2007) argued
4606 that intakes estimated from either of these methods have a tendency to overestimate
4607 the true intake and showed that an intake obtained assuming a constant intake rate
4608 throughout the monitoring interval (*i.e.*, constant-chronic method) is an unbiased
4609 estimate of the true intake when the measurement and the excretion/retention function
4610 are accurately known or when they are uncertain but unbiased (*i.e.*, the mean of the
4611 distribution describing the uncertainty is the true value). If the uncertainties in the
4612 measurement or in the excretion/retention function are affected by a bias, the
4613 constant-chronic method produces a biased result, but the bias in the result can be
4614 eliminated by the use of appropriate adjustment factors (Birchall *et al*, 2007).

4615

4616 ***Route of Intake***

4617 (367) In practice one may encounter situations when the mode of intake is unknown
4618 and cannot be easily discerned on the basis of health physics records or available
4619 bioassay data. For example, it may not be known if the intake took place by inhalation
4620 only, by ingestion only, or by a combination of inhalation and ingestion. Even if it is
4621 known that a combination of inhalation and ingestion occurred it may be impossible
4622 to determine what fraction of activity was inhaled and what fraction was ingested. In

4623 the absence of specific information, it would be appropriate to assume that intake was
4624 by inhalation for an occupational exposure. The effect of assumed route of intake on
4625 assessed doses can be large and should be investigated when assessed doses are
4626 significant.

4627

4628 **Source term**

4629 (368) Assumptions regarding the source term (*i.e.* the identity of the radionuclides
4630 and their relative abundances) may represent major sources of uncertainty when
4631 monitoring does not include the measurement of all the radioisotopes present in the
4632 working environment. In many situations a worker is exposed to several isotopes of
4633 the same radionuclide, but monitoring is accomplished through the measurement of
4634 one of the isotopes. For example, lung monitoring of uranium through the
4635 measurement of ^{235}U relies on assumptions on the level of enrichment. In other
4636 circumstances, assessments of exposure to certain radionuclides are based on the
4637 monitoring results of a progeny radionuclide in the lungs. For example, monitoring of
4638 ^{232}Th by measurement of a progeny radionuclide relies on assumptions about the
4639 equilibrium of radionuclides in the ^{232}Th decay chain in the material to which the
4640 worker is exposed. Also, exposure to some radionuclides may be based on
4641 measurement of a surrogate radionuclide known to be present in the working
4642 environment. For example, lung monitoring of ^{239}Pu may be based on the
4643 measurement of ^{241}Am , using assumptions about the fraction of ^{241}Am , which grows
4644 from ^{241}Pu .

4645 (369) Information on the chemical form, or mixture of forms, of an inhaled
4646 radionuclide is needed to help determine an appropriate dissolution model for activity
4647 deposited in the lungs. The dissolution rate in the lungs can represent a major source
4648 of uncertainty in a dose assessment, particularly when dose estimates are based on
4649 excretion data alone. For example, if dose estimates are based on urinary excretion
4650 data, then the dose to lungs can sometimes be underestimated by several orders of
4651 magnitude if the material is incorrectly assumed to be highly soluble or overestimated
4652 by several orders of magnitude if the material is incorrectly assumed to have low
4653 solubility. When no direct information is available on the inhaled form of a
4654 radionuclide, a combination of urinary and faecal data and, where feasible, *in vivo*
4655 lung measurements may greatly reduce the uncertainty in dose estimates associated
4656 with the chemical form of the radionuclide.

4657

4658 **Particle size**

4659 (370) The particle size can be an important source of uncertainty because it
4660 influences the assumed deposition in the respiratory tract. The urinary and faecal
4661 excretion rates depend of the particle size because the size influences the transfer of
4662 unabsorbed particles to the alimentary tract. In some working environments
4663 multimodal aerosols exist within the respirable size range.

4664

4665 **6.5.3 Uncertainties in Biokinetic Models**

4666 (371) Biokinetic models are used in radiation protection to predict the transfer and
4667 bioaccumulation of a radionuclide in various organs and the rate of excretion of the

4668 radionuclide in urine and faeces. These models are used in this document to derive
4669 dose coefficients for inhalation or ingestion or radionuclides and to provide reference
4670 rates of urinary and faecal excretion following intake of a radionuclide for use in
4671 interpretation of bioassay data.

4672 (372) The following categorization of the main types of information used to develop
4673 biokinetic models and summary of uncertainties associated with each type of
4674 information is taken from a paper by Leggett (2001). Additional investigations of the
4675 sources and extent of uncertainties in biokinetic models for radionuclides can be
4676 found in the following papers and reports: Apostoaei *et al* 1998, Leggett *et al* 1998,
4677 2001, 2007, 2008, Harrison *et al* 2001 2002, Bolch *et al* 2001, 2003, Skrable *et al*
4678 2002, Likhtarev *et al* 2003, Apostoaei and Miller 2004, Sánchez 2007, Pawel *et al*
4679 2007, NCRP, 2010.

4680

4681 ***Uncertainties associated with the formulation (structure) of a biokinetic model***

4682 (373) The confidence that can be placed in predictions of a biokinetic model for an
4683 element depends not only on uncertainties associated with parameter values of the
4684 model but also on uncertainties associated with the model structure. Such
4685 uncertainties may arise because the structure provides an oversimplified
4686 representation of the known processes, because unknown processes have been omitted
4687 from the model, or because part or all of the model formulation is based on
4688 mathematical convenience rather than consideration of processes. Some combination
4689 of these limitations in model structure is associated with each of the biokinetic models
4690 used in this document. These limitations hamper the assignment of meaningful
4691 uncertainty statements to the parameter values of a model because they cast doubt on
4692 the interpretation of the parameter values. For purposes of assessing the uncertainties
4693 associated with predictions of a biokinetic model for an element, it is often more
4694 illuminating to examine the range of values generated by a limited number of
4695 alternative modelling approaches than to produce large numbers of predictions based
4696 on variation of parameter values within a fixed but uncertain model structure.

4697

4698 ***Types of information used to construct biokinetic models for elements***

4699 (374) Regardless of the model formulation or modelling approach, a biokinetic
4700 model for an element usually is based on some combination of the following sources
4701 of information:

4702 H1: direct information on humans, *i.e.*, quantitative measurements of the element
4703 in human subjects;

4704 H2: observations of the behaviour of chemically similar elements in human
4705 subjects;

4706 A1: observations of the behaviour of the element in non-human species;

4707 A2: observations of the behaviour of one or more chemically similar elements in
4708 non-human species.

4709 Data types H2, A1, and A2 serve as surrogates for H1, which is the preferred type of
4710 information on which to base a biokinetic model.

4711 (375) The sources H1, H2, A1, and A2 are sometimes supplemented with various
4712 other types of information or constraints, such as quantitative physiological

4713 information (e.g., rates of bone restructuring); considerations of mass balance;
4714 predictions of theoretical models based on fundamental physical, chemical, and
4715 mathematical principles (e.g., a theoretical model of deposition of inhaled particles in
4716 the different segments of the lung); experimental data derived with anatomically
4717 realistic physical models (e.g., hollow casts of portions of the respiratory tract used to
4718 measure deposition of inhaled particles); and *in vitro* data (e.g., dissolution of
4719 compounds in simulated lung fluid). Among these supplemental sources of
4720 information, mass balance and quantitative physiological data (P) have particularly
4721 wide use.

4722

4723 *Sources of uncertainty in applications of human data*

4724 (376) It is desirable to base a biokinetic model for an element on observations of the
4725 time-dependent distribution and excretion of that element in human subjects (H1
4726 data). Some degree of this type of direct information is available for most essential
4727 elements, as well as for some important non-essential elements, such as caesium, lead,
4728 radium, uranium, americium, and plutonium. Depending on the degree of biological
4729 realism in the model formulation, it may be possible to supplement element-specific
4730 information for human subjects with quantitative physiological information for
4731 humans on the important processes controlling the biokinetics of the element of
4732 interest. For example, in ICRP Publications 67 (1993), 69 (1995a), and 71 (1995b),
4733 long-term removal of certain radionuclides from bone volume is identified with bone
4734 turnover.

4735 (377) Although it is the preferred type of information for purposes of model
4736 construction, H1 data often have one or more of the following limitations: small study
4737 groups, coupled with potentially large inter-subject variability in the biokinetics of an
4738 element; short observation periods, coupled with potentially large intra-subject
4739 variability; use of unhealthy subjects whose diseases may alter the biokinetics of the
4740 element; paucity of observations for women and children; collection of small,
4741 potentially non-representative samples of tissue; inaccuracies in measurement
4742 techniques; uncertainty in the pattern or level of intake of the element; atypical study
4743 conditions; and inconsistency in reported values. In some cases, inconsistency in
4744 reported values may provide some of the best evidence of the uncertain nature of the
4745 data.

4746 (378) An important tool in the development of biokinetic models for radionuclides
4747 has been the use of reference organ contents of stable elements, as estimated from
4748 autopsy measurements on subjects chronically exposed at environmental levels or at
4749 elevated levels encountered in occupational exposures (ICRP, 1975). Such data are
4750 commonly used to adjust parameter values of biokinetic models or introduce new
4751 model components to achieve balance between reported values of intake, total-body
4752 content, and excretion of stable elements. Such balance considerations can provide
4753 useful constraints on model parameters, provided the data have been collected under
4754 carefully controlled conditions. However, such balance considerations often have
4755 been based on data from disparate sources of information and unreliable measurement
4756 techniques and in some cases may have led to erroneous models or parameter values.

4757 (379) A confidence statement based on H1 data would reflect a variety of factors,
4758 such as the reliability of the measurement technique(s), the number and state of health

4759 of the subjects, representativeness of the subjects and biological samples, consistency
4760 in data from different studies, knowledge concerning the level and pattern of intake,
4761 and the relevance of the information to the situation being modelled. For example,
4762 confidence in a parameter value based on H1 data would be reduced if the data were
4763 determined in a study on any of the following study populations: several seriously ill
4764 subjects with known intakes, several healthy subjects with poorly characterized
4765 intakes, or one healthy subject with known intake.

4766

4767 *Uncertainty in interspecies extrapolation of biokinetic data*

4768 (380) Interspecies extrapolation of biokinetic data is based on the concept of a
4769 general biological regularity across the different species with regard to cellular
4770 structure, organ structure, and biochemistry. Mammalian species, with cell structure,
4771 organ structure, biochemistry, and body temperature regulation particularly close to
4772 those of man, are expected to provide better analogies to man than do non-mammalian
4773 species with regard to biokinetics of contaminants.

4774 (381) Despite the broad structural, functional, and biochemical similarities among
4775 mammalian species, interspecies extrapolation of biokinetic data has proven to be an
4776 uncertain process. Similarities across species often are more of a qualitative than
4777 quantitative nature, in that two species that handle an internally deposited
4778 radionuclide in the same qualitative manner may exhibit dissimilar kinetics with
4779 regard to that substance. Moreover, there are important structural, functional, and
4780 biochemical differences among the mammalian species, including differences in
4781 specialized organs, hepatic bile formation and composition, level of biliary secretion,
4782 urine volume and acidity, the amount of fat in the body, the magnitude of absorption
4783 or secretion in various regions of the digestive tract, types of bacteria in the digestive
4784 tract, and microstructure and patterns of remodelling of bones.

4785 (382) In general, the choice of an animal model will depend strongly on the
4786 processes and subsystems of the body thought to be most important in the biokinetics
4787 of the radionuclide in humans, because a given species may resemble humans with
4788 regard to certain processes and subsystems and not others. For example, data on
4789 monkeys or baboons may be given relatively high weight for purposes of modelling
4790 the distribution of a radionuclide in the skeleton due to the close similarities in the
4791 skeletons of non-human primates and humans. Data on dogs may be given relatively
4792 high weight for purposes of modelling the rate of loss of a radionuclide from the liver
4793 due to broad quantitative similarities between dogs and humans with regard to hepatic
4794 handling of many radionuclides.

4795 (383) A physiologically based model provides the proper setting in which to
4796 extrapolate data from laboratory animals to man, in that it helps to focus interspecies
4797 comparisons on specific physiological processes and specific subsystems of the body
4798 for which extrapolation may be valid, even if whole-body extrapolations are invalid.
4799 Depending on the process being modelled, it may be preferable to limit attention to
4800 data for a single species or small number of species, or to appeal to average or scaled
4801 data for a collection of species.

4802 (384) The degree of confidence that can be placed in a model value based on animal
4803 data depends on the quality and completeness of the data and the expected strength of
4804 the animal analogy for the given situation. Thus, one must consider potential

4805 experimental and statistical problems in the data as well as the logical basis for
4806 extrapolation of those particular data to humans. Relatively high confidence might be
4807 placed in a model value based on animal data if fairly extensive interspecies
4808 comparisons have been made and include observations on the species expected to be
4809 most human-like; these comparisons suggest a strong basis for interspecies
4810 extrapolation, either because the data are species-invariant or because the
4811 physiological processes governing the biokinetics of the element in different species
4812 have been reasonably well established; the model structure allows meaningful
4813 extrapolation to man, usually on the basis of physiological processes; and such
4814 processes have been well quantified in humans (*i.e.*, the central value for humans has
4815 been reasonably well established). A fairly wide uncertainty interval is indicated if
4816 data are available only for species that frequently exhibit qualitative differences from
4817 man (*e.g.*, if data were available only for rats) or if no meaningful basis for
4818 extrapolation to man has been established with regard to the quantity of interest.
4819 Whatever the quality of the animal data, the uncertainty interval should reflect the fact
4820 that some confidence in the predictive strength of the data is lost when the data are
4821 extrapolated across species.

4822

4823 *Uncertainty in inter-element extrapolation of biokinetic data*

4824 (385) Biokinetic models for elements often are constructed partly or wholly from
4825 data for chemically similar elements, on the basis of empirical evidence that chemical
4826 analogues often exhibit close physiological similarities. For example, the alkaline
4827 earth elements, calcium, strontium, barium, and radium, exhibit many physiological
4828 as well as chemical similarities (ICRP, 1993, 1995a), and the alkali metals rubidium
4829 and caesium closely follow the movement of their chemical analogue, potassium.

4830 (386) There are, however, counterexamples to the premise that chemical analogues
4831 are also physiological analogues. For example, the alkali metals potassium and
4832 sodium share close physical and chemical similarities but exhibit diametrically
4833 opposite behaviours in the body, with potassium being primarily an intracellular
4834 element and sodium being primarily an extracellular element.

4835 (387) Moreover, chemically similar elements that behave in a qualitatively similar
4836 fashion in the body may exhibit quite different kinetics. For example, caesium
4837 appears to follow the behaviour of potassium in the body in a qualitative sense but is
4838 distributed somewhat differently from potassium at early times after intake and
4839 exhibits a substantially longer whole-body retention time.

4840 (388) The level of confidence that can be placed in a model value based on human
4841 data for a chemically similar element depends on the quality and completeness of the
4842 data for the analogue, as well as the expected strength of the analogy for the given
4843 situation. Whatever the quality of the data for the chemical analogue, the confidence
4844 interval should reflect the fact that some confidence in the predictive strength of the
4845 data is lost when the data are extrapolated across elements.

4846 (389) The strength of the chemical analogy for a given element depends largely on
4847 the extent to which the chemically similar elements have also been found to be
4848 physiologically similar. That is, the analogy would be considered strong for a pair of
4849 elements if a relatively large set of experimental data indicate that these elements
4850 have essentially the same qualitative behaviour in the body and their quantitative

4851 behaviour either is similar or differs in a predictable fashion. In view of
4852 counterexamples to the premise that chemically similar elements are necessarily
4853 physiologically similar, the chemical analogy does not provide high confidence if the
4854 elements in question have not been compared in animals or man.

4855 (390) If a chemical analogue has been shown to be a good physiological analogue,
4856 then application of human data on the chemical analogue (H2 data) may be preferable
4857 to application of animal data on the element of interest (A1 data). For example, for
4858 purposes of constructing or evaluating a biokinetic model for americium in humans,
4859 use of quantitative human data on the physiological analogue curium seems preferable
4860 to use of the best quantitative animal data on americium. Similar statements can be
4861 made for radium and barium, rubidium and potassium, or other pairs of close
4862 physiological analogues. On the other hand, if two chemically similar elements show
4863 only broad physiological similarities, the animal analogy may be preferred to the
4864 chemical analogy, particularly if element-specific data are available for a variety of
4865 animal species (as is the case, for example, for uranium and calcium). In general,
4866 lower confidence would be placed in animal data for a chemical analogue than in
4867 animal data for the element of interest.

4868

4869 *Uncertainty in central estimates stemming from variability in the population*

4870 (391) ‘Uncertainty’ refers here to lack of knowledge of a central value for a
4871 population, and ‘variability’ refers to quantitative differences between different
4872 members of a population. Although uncertainty and variability are distinct concepts,
4873 the variability in biokinetic characteristics within a population is often an important
4874 factor contributing to the uncertainty in a central estimate of a biokinetic quantity.
4875 This is because such variability complicates the problem of identifying the central
4876 tendency of these characteristics in the population due to the small number of
4877 observations generally available and the fact that subjects usually are not randomly
4878 selected.

4879 (392) Variability in the biokinetics of radionuclides, pharmaceuticals, or chemicals
4880 in human populations appears to result from many different physiological factors or
4881 modulating host factors of an environmental nature, including age, sex, pregnancy,
4882 lactation, exercise, disease, stress, smoking, and diet. Large inter-individual biokinetic
4883 variations sometimes persist in the absence of appreciable environmental differences
4884 and suggest that these variations may be genetically controlled. In real-world
4885 situations, genetic and environmental factors may interact dynamically, producing
4886 sizable variations in the behaviour of substances taken into the human body.

4887

4888 **6.5.4 Uncertainties in Dosimetric Models**

4889 (393) Dosimetric models are used to estimate the mean absorbed dose resulting
4890 from radiations emitted by nuclear transformations of radionuclides present in the
4891 body. The absorbed dose is computed for target regions (organs, tissues, or regions of
4892 tissues) considered to be radiosensitive. Radiation and tissue weighting factors are
4893 applied to the mean absorbed dose to determine the equivalent and effective dose. The
4894 weighting factors are assigned reference values and as such are not regarded as
4895 uncertain quantities. Thus, the uncertainties associated with an estimated equivalent

4896 dose to an organ, for example, are considered to be those associated with the
4897 underlying mean absorbed dose.

4898 (394) The physical and anatomical parameters contributing to uncertainties in the
4899 mean absorbed dose for internal emitters are:

- 4900 • Energy and intensity of the nuclear and atomic radiations emitted by the
4901 radionuclide and by any radioactive progeny;
- 4902 • Interaction coefficients of the emitted radiations in tissues;
- 4903 • Elemental composition of the tissues of the body;
- 4904 • Volume, shape, density of the organs of the body; and
- 4905 • Parameters describing the spatial relationship of the source regions (regions
4906 containing the radionuclide) and the target regions (radiosensitive organs and
4907 tissues for which dose values are desired).

4908 (395) Limitations are present in the computational model representing the anatomy
4909 and in the numerical procedures used to calculate the energy absorbed in the target
4910 tissues. The magnitudes of these uncertainties vary with radiation type, the energy of
4911 the radiation, and the specific source-target pair. The adoption of computational
4912 phantoms based upon medical imaging data (often referred to as voxel phantoms) has
4913 reduced the uncertainties associated with cross-irradiation of tissues by photon and
4914 neutron radiations to some extent by providing more realistic spatial relationships of
4915 some source and target regions (ICRP, 2009). However the absorbed dose is
4916 frequently dominated by the contributions from non-penetrating radiations. For source
4917 and target regions that cannot be resolved in the medical image data, *e.g.*, source and
4918 target regions in the respiratory and alimentary tracts and in the skeleton, uncertainties
4919 are associated with the computational models used to represent these regions.

4920 (396) The anatomical models are static and thus do not address uncertainties in the
4921 spatial position of the organs due to breathing and posture other than reclining.
4922 Reference values for the masses and elemental composition of the organs of the body
4923 have been defined in Publication 89 (ICRP, 2002a) and used in the reference
4924 computational models of the anatomy (computational phantoms) noted above.

4925 (397) The parameters of the dosimetric model contributing to uncertainties in the
4926 absorbed dose are those physical parameters associated with the nuclear
4927 transformation processes that determine the energy and intensity of the emitted
4928 radiation and parameters which govern the transport radiations in the body. An
4929 uncertainty less than 10% has been assigned to attenuation and absorption coefficients
4930 for photons with somewhat higher uncertainties ascribed to soft tissue stopping power
4931 values for alpha and electron particles. Improvements in the basic nuclear data have
4932 reduced the uncertainties in the physical half-lives of radionuclides and the branching
4933 fractions of decay modes. The simplified procedures used in the dosimetric
4934 calculations to address the delayed beta and gamma radiations of spontaneous fission
4935 can contribute substantial uncertainties in the mean absorbed dose in some tissues.

4936 (398) The dosimetric calculations must associate an anatomical region (source
4937 region) with each biokinetic compartment. Many biokinetic models partition the
4938 systemic activity among a few identified organs/tissues and include a compartment
4939 referred to as 'Other tissue' which represents the residual. The dosimetric procedure
4940 distributes the activity in the 'Other tissue' compartment uniformly among all tissues
4941 not explicitly noted in the model. Substantial uncertainty may be associated with the

4942 mean absorbed dose for tissues that are members of ‘Other tissue’. Frequently ‘Other
4943 tissue’ includes tissues assigned an explicit tissue weighting factor. For example,
4944 breast tissue is rarely if ever explicitly noted in biokinetic models and thus its mean
4945 absorbed dose is often based on its membership of ‘Other tissue’.

4946 (399) Some uncertainties also arise in the manner in which the biokinetic models are
4947 implemented in the dosimetric calculations. The biokinetic models are presented as
4948 compartment models which in a dosimetric evaluation are further extended to include
4949 the kinetics of radioactive decay and ingrowth of radioactive progeny. A number of
4950 numerical methods are capable of solving the set of potentially large numbers (100s)
4951 of coupled differential ‘stiff’ equations that describe the kinetics, although frequently
4952 the demands of numerical accuracy have to be balanced with computational time.
4953 Compartment-model issues contributing to uncertainties in the mean absorbed dose
4954 include the assumed biokinetics of members of a decay chain (independent or shared
4955 kinetics), and the representation of ‘Other’ tissues when their anatomical identity
4956 varies among the decay chain members. (Section 3.7.2 and Annex C of Publication 71
4957 (ICRP, 1995c)).
4958

5000

7.2 Dose coefficients

5001 (405) For inhalation, dose coefficients are calculated using the revised HRTM
 5002 described in Section 3.2. Particle sizes are assumed to be log-normally distributed
 5003 with an AMAD of 5 μm and geometric standard deviation σ_g of approximately 2.5
 5004 (ICRP, 1994a, *Paragraph 170*) inhaled by a male Reference Worker at Light Work.
 5005 They are assumed to have a density of 3.00 g cm^{-3} , and a shape factor of 1.5 (ICRP,
 5006 1994a, *Paragraph 181*).

5007 (406) For ingestion, dose coefficients are calculated using the HATM (ICRP, 2006)
 5008 with parameter values for the reference adult male, and are given for specified values
 5009 of f_A .

5010 (407) Extensive additional information for all relevant isotopes of each element is
 5011 given on an accompanying CD-ROM, including:

- 5012 • Committed equivalent dose coefficients for organs and tissues, for males and
 5013 females;
- 5014 • Dose coefficients for all chemical forms considered;
- 5015 • Dose coefficients for inhaled aerosols with median sizes ranging from an
 5016 AMTD of 0.001 μm to an AMAD of 20 μm ;
- 5017 • Committed doses to 7 d, 30 d, 1 and 10 years after acute intake as well as 50
 5018 years. These data illustrate the build-up of dose with time;
- 5019 • Dose coefficients for intake by ingestion, with the default f_A values appropriate
 5020 for the element, for all relevant radioisotopes;
- 5021 • Dose coefficients for radioisotopes not given in the printed reports in this
 5022 series.

5023

5024

7.3 Interpretation of Individual Monitoring Data

5025 (408) The information provided in subsequent reports in this series on the
 5026 interpretation of bioassay monitoring data updates that given in Publications 54 and
 5027 78 (ICRP, 1988a, 1997b), and also includes data related to the calculation of doses
 5028 per unit content. These additional data are provided to facilitate the interpretation of
 5029 monitoring data.

5030 (409) Methods of individual monitoring are given with typical detection limits that
 5031 can readily be achieved. Comments on preferred measurement techniques and the
 5032 adequacy of the detection limits are given where appropriate.

5033 (410) Predicted values of the measured quantity (body content, organ content, or
 5034 daily excretion) are given as a function, $m(t)$, at time t after an acute intake of 1 Bq.

5035 (411) If only a single measurement is made, the intake, I , can be determined from
 5036 the measured quantity, M , by:

5037

5038

$$I = \frac{M}{m(t)} \quad (7.1)$$

5039

5040 The intake can be multiplied by the dose coefficient, $e(50)$, to give the committed
 5041 effective dose, $E(50)$. Hence:

5042
$$E(50) = I \times e(50) = M \times e(50)/m(t) \dots \dots \dots (7.2)$$

5043 If the time of the intake during a monitoring period is unknown, the intake is
 5044 generally assumed to have occurred at the mid-point of the period (Section 6.3).

5045 (412) Dose per unit content, $z(t)$, represents the committed effective dose per unit
 5046 organ (body) radionuclide content or per unit radionuclide content in the 24 hour
 5047 excreta sample at time t after an acute intake. The use of $z(t)$ simplifies the dose
 5048 evaluation to a single step, instead of the traditional method of first applying the
 5049 retention or excretion function $m(t)$ to calculate the intake (equation 7.1), and then the
 5050 dose coefficient $e(50)$ to calculate the resulting effective dose (equation 7.2).

5051
$$E(50) = M \times z(t) \dots \dots \dots (7.3)$$

5052 (413) Values of dose per unit content, $z(t)$, are provided to allow a more
 5053 straightforward assessment of committed dose from bioassay measurements without
 5054 the need to first determine the intake. For measurements of activity in body tissues
 5055 and excreta, predicted values of committed effective dose are tabulated for various
 5056 times after radionuclide intake following inhalation, ingestion, entry through wounds
 5057 or uptake to blood.

5058 (414) Graphs of predicted activity of the radionuclide in selected body tissues, urine
 5059 (daily excretion) and faeces (daily excretion), at various times after intake, are given
 5060 for an acute intake of 1 Bq of the radionuclide (unit intake). These values correspond
 5061 to $m(t)$. Figures are given for intakes by inhalation, ingestion, and direct transfer to
 5062 blood. Data are given in the form of fractional activity related to the intake, *i.e.* Bq per
 5063 Bq intake for retention and daily excretion. One exception to this is for intake of
 5064 tritiated water where data are given in Bq l⁻¹ per Bq intake since this is directly related
 5065 to the dose rate.

5066 (415) Data are given for time periods up to 10⁴ days after intake or until the
 5067 fractional activity is less than 10⁻¹⁰ of the intake.

5068 (416) For each radionuclide, the monitoring periods have been selected (as in
 5069 Publication 78, paragraph 91) for intake by inhalation for all absorption Types so that
 5070 any underestimation introduced by an unknown time of intake is no more than a factor
 5071 of three when an acute intake in the middle of the monitoring interval is assumed. The
 5072 frequency of monitoring, determined using the models that have been applied, is
 5073 determined both by the behaviour of the radionuclide in the body and its physical
 5074 half-life. Within any workplace, the probability of occurrence of an intake should also
 5075 be taken into account.

5076 (417) The accompanying CD-ROM gives extensive additional information for all
 5077 relevant isotopes of each element, including:

- 5078 • Committed effective dose (Sv) per unit measurement (Bq) for an acute intake
 5079 by inhalation of aerosols with median sizes ranging from an AMTD of 0.001
 5080 μm to an AMAD of 20 μm;
- 5081 • Committed effective dose (Sv) per unit measurement (Bq) for an acute intake
 5082 by ingestion, with default f_A values appropriate for the element;
- 5083 • Bioassay data (*i.e.* whole body and/or organ retention, and daily urinary and
 5084 faecal excretion, Bq per Bq intake), for an acute intake by inhalation of
 5085 aerosols with median sizes ranging from an AMTD of 0.001 μm to an AMAD

- 5086 of 20 μm ;
- 5087 • Similar bioassay data for an acute intake by ingestion;
- 5088 • Figures giving measured activity content per unit dose (Bq Sv^{-1}) in selected
- 5089 body tissues, urine (daily excretion) or faeces (daily excretion), at various
- 5090 times after intake by inhalation or ingestion. These values correspond to
- 5091 $0.001/z(t)$. These data can also be used to facilitate decisions about the design
- 5092 of monitoring programmes and the extent of the assessment required, as
- 5093 described in Chapter 5.

5094
5095

7.4 Quality Assurance

5096 (418) The Commission attaches particular importance to quality assurance. The

5097 Task Group of Committee 2 on Dose Calculations arranged for the quantities given in

5098 this series of reports to be calculated independently at different laboratories, using

5099 different computer codes. Any discrepancies in these calculations were investigated

5100 and resolved before publication.

5101

5102

REFERENCES

- 5103 Anderson, M., Philipson, K., Svartengren, M. and Camner, P., 1995. Human
 5104 deposition and clearance of 6 µm particles inhaled with an extremely low flow
 5105 rate. *Exp. Lung Res.* 21, 187–195.
- 5106 Ansoborlo, E., Boulard, D., LeGuen, B., 1997. Particle size distribution of uranium
 5107 aerosols in the French nuclear fuel cycle. *Radioprotection* 32, 319–330.
- 5108 Ansoborlo, E., Prat, O., Moisy, P., *et al.*, 2006. Actinide speciation in relation to
 5109 biological processes. *Biochimie* 88 (11), 1605-1618.
- 5110 Apostoaei, A.I., Lewis, C.J., Hammonds, J.H., Hoffman, F.O., 1998. Uncertainties in
 5111 doses from ingestion of Cs-137, Sr-90, Co-60, Ru-106, and I-131. *Health*
 5112 *Phys.* 74, S14-S15.
- 5113 Apostoaei, A. I., Miller, L F., 2004. Uncertainties in dose coefficients from ingestion
 5114 of ¹³¹I, ¹³⁷Cs, and ⁹⁰Sr. *Health Phys.* 86, 460-482.
- 5115 Bahadori, A.A., Johnson, P.B., Jokisch, D.W., Eckerman, K.F., Bolch, W.E., 2011.
 5116 Response functions for computing absorbed dose to skeletal tissues from
 5117 neutron irradiation. *Phys Med Biol* 56, 6873-6897.
- 5118 Berkovski, V., Bonchuk, Y., Ratia, G., 2003a. Dose per unit content functions: a
 5119 robust tool for the interpretation of bioassay data. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 105(1-
 5120 4), 399-402.
- 5121 Berkovski, V., Eckerman, K.F., Phipps, A.W., Noßke, D., 2003b. Dosimetry of
 5122 radioiodine for embryo and fetus. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 105(1-4), 265-268.
- 5123 Bihl, D.E., Lynch, T.P., Carbaugh, E.H., Sula, M.J., 1988a. Problems with Detection
 5124 of Intakes of Very Insoluble Plutonium. Presented at the Thirty Fourth Annual
 5125 Conference on Bioassay, Analytical, and Environmental Radiochemistry, Las
 5126 Vegas, Nevada, October 17-21, 1988. PNL-SA-15981. National Technical
 5127 Information Service, Springfield, Virginia.
- 5128 Bihl, D.E., Carbaugh, E.H., Sula, M.J., Aldridge, T.L., 1988b. Human data supporting
 5129 a super Class Y form of plutonium (abstract). *Health Phys.* 54(Suppl. 1), S4.
- 5130 Bihl, D.E., Lynch, T.P., Carbaugh, E.H., and Sula, M.J., 1988c. Methods to Improve
 5131 Routine Bioassay Monitoring for Freshly Separated, Poorly Transported
 5132 Plutonium. PNL-6695, Pacific Northwest Laboratory Richland, Washington.
 5133 National Technical Information Service, Springfield, Virginia.
- 5134 BIPM, IEC, IFCC, ISO, IUPAC, IUPAP, OIML (2010). Guide to the Expression of
 5135 Uncertainty in Measurement. JGCM 100:2008. First edition 2008, corrected
 5136 version 2010.
- 5137 Birchall, A., Puncher, M., Marsh, J.W., 2007. Avoiding biased estimates of dose
 5138 when nothing is known about the time of intake. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 127,
 5139 343-346.
- 5140 Bolch, W.E., Farfan, E.B., Huh, C.H., *et al.*, 2001. Influences of parameter
 5141 uncertainties within the ICRP-66 respiratory tract model: Particle deposition.
 5142 *Health Phys.* 81, 378-394.
- 5143 Bolch, W.E., Huston, T.E., Farfan, E.B., Vernetson, W.G., Bolch, W.E., 2003.
 5144 Influences of parameter uncertainties within the ICRP-66 respiratory tract
 5145 model: Particle clearance. *Health Phys.* 84, 421-435.

- 5146 Bolch, W.E., Eckerman, K.F., Sgouros, Thomas, S.R. (2009). MIRD Pamphlet No.
 5147 21: A generalized schema for radiopharmaceutical dosimetry - Standardization
 5148 of Nomenclature. J Nucl Med 50, 477-484.
- 5149 Britcher, A.R., Strong, R., 1994. Personal air sampling – a technique for the
 5150 assessment of chronic low level exposure?. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 53, 59-62.
- 5151 Britcher, A.R., Battersby, W.P., Peace, M.S., 1998. The practical application of
 5152 models for assessing intakes of radionuclides by workers. Radiat. Protect.
 5153 Dosim. 79, 71-74.
- 5154 Camner, P., Anderson, M., Philipson, K., *et al.*, 1997. Human bronchiolar deposition
 5155 and retention of 6-, 8- and 10- μ m particles, Exp. Lung Res. 23, 517-535.
- 5156 Carbaugh, E.H., La Bone, T.R., 2003. Two case studies of highly insoluble plutonium
 5157 inhalation with implications for bioassay. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 105, 133-138.
- 5158 Carbaugh, E.H., 2003. Minimum Detectable Dose as a Measure of Bioassay
 5159 Programme Capability. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 105, 391-394.
- 5160 Cox, M.G., Harris, P.M., 2004. Best Practice Guide No. 6. Uncertainty evaluation.
 5161 Technical report, National Physical Laboratory, Teddington, UK. Available
 5162 for download from the SSfM website at www.npl.co.uk.
- 5163 Coombs, M.A., Cuddihy, R.G. 1983. Emanation of ^{232}U daughter products from
 5164 submicrometer particles of uranium oxide and thorium dioxide by nuclear
 5165 recoil and inert gas diffusion. J. Aerosol Sci. 14, 75-86.
- 5166 Crawford Brown, D.J., Wilson, J., 1984. Observations on very long term removal of
 5167 uranium compounds. Health Phys. 47, 443-446.
- 5168 Cristy, M., 1980. Mathematical phantoms representing children of various ages for
 5169 use in estimates of internal dose. Oak Ridge National Laboratory Report
 5170 ORNL/NUREG/TM-367.
- 5171 Cristy, M., Eckerman, K.F., 1987. Specific absorbed fractions of energy at various
 5172 ages for internal photon sources. Oak Ridge National Laboratory Report
 5173 ORNL/NUREG/TM-8381, Vol. 1-7.
- 5174 Davis, K., Marsh, J.W., Gerondal, M., *et al.*, 2007. Assessment of intakes and doses
 5175 to workers followed for 15 years after accidental inhalation of ^{60}Co . Health
 5176 Phys. 92, 332–344.
- 5177 Doerfel, H., Andrasi, A., Bailey, M.R., *et al.*, 2006. General Guidelines for the
 5178 Estimation of Committed Effective Dose from Incorporation Monitoring Data
 5179 (Project IDEAS – EU Contract No. FIKR-CT2001-00160), Research Centre
 5180 Karlsruhe. Research Report FZKA 7243, Karlsruhe. ISSN 0947-8620.
- 5181 Doerfel, H., Andrasi, A., Bailey, M.R., *et al.*, 2007. General guidelines for the
 5182 assessment of internal dose from monitoring data: Progress of the IDEAS
 5183 Project. European Workshop on Individual Monitoring of Ionising Radiation.
 5184 11-15 April, 2005. Vienna, Austria. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 125, 19-22.
- 5185 Doerfel, H., Andrasi, A., Bailey, M.R., *et al.*, 2008 Internal Dosimetry : The science
 5186 and art of internal dose assessment. In: proceed. 12th International Congress
 5187 of the International Radiation Protection Association. IRPA12 RC-6: 1-63;..
- 5188 Dorrian, M.D., Bailey, M.R., 1995. Particle size distribution of radioactive aerosols
 5189 measured in the workplace. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 60, 119–133.
- 5190 Duke, K., 1998. Use of the urinary excretion of creatinine in plutonium in urine
 5191 bioassay. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 79, 125-128.

- 5192 Eckerman, K.F., 1994. Dosimetric methodology of the ICRP. In: Internal Radiation
 5193 Dosimetry (edited by O.G. Raabe). Medical Physics Publishing, Wisconsin.
 5194 pp239-270.
- 5195 Eckerman, K.F., Westfal., RJ, Ryman, JC., Cristy, M., 1994. Availability of nuclear
 5196 decay data in electronic form, including beta spectra not previously published.
 5197 Health Phys. 67, 338-45.
- 5198 Eckerman, K.F., Kerr, G.D., 1999. Y12 uranium exposure study. Oak Ridge, TN: Oak
 5199 Ridge National laboratory ORNL/TM-1999-114.
- 5200 Elliot, N.L., Bickel, G.A., Linauskas, S.H., Paterson, L.M., 2006. Determination of
 5201 femtogram quantities of ²³⁹Pu and ²⁴⁰Pu in bioassay samples by thermal
 5202 ionization mass spectrometry. J. Radioanal. Nucl. Chem. 267, 637-650.
- 5203 Endo, A., Yamaguchi, Y., Eckerman, K.F., 2003. Development and assessment of a
 5204 new radioactive decay database use for dosimetry calculation. Radiat. Prot.
 5205 Dosim. 105, 565-9.
- 5206 Endo, A., Yamaguchi, Y., Eckerman, K.F., 2004. Nuclear decay for dosimetry
 5207 calculation. Revised Data of ICRP Publication 38 *Japanese Atomic Energy*
 5208 *Research Institute (JAERI) Report*.
- 5209 Epker, B.N., Frost, H.M., 1965a. Correlation of bone resorption and formation with
 5210 the physical behavior of loaded bone. J Dental Research 44, 33-41.
- 5211 Epker, B.N., Frost, H.M., 1965b. The direction of transverse drift of actively forming
 5212 osteons in human rib cortex. J Bone and Joint Surgery 47, 1211-1215.
 5213 <http://www.jbjs.org/data/Journals/JBJS/460/1211.pdf>
- 5214 Etherington, G., Cossonnet, C., Franck, D., *et al.*, 2004a. Optimisation of Monitoring
 5215 for Internal Exposure (OMINEX). Chilton, NRPB-W60.
- 5216 Etherington, G., Ansoborlo, E., Bérard, P., *et al.*, 2004b. OMINEX: Development of
 5217 Guidance on Monitoring for Internal Exposure. Proceedings on the 11th IRPA
 5218 International Congress, Madrid, 23-28 May 2004 (published on CD-ROM).
- 5219 EURACHEM/CITAC, (2000). EURACHEM/CITAC Guide, Quantifying Uncertainty
 5220 in Analytical Measurement, 2nd Ed., EURACHEM, Berlin.
 5221 <http://www.eurachem.org/guides/pdf/QUAM2000-1.pdf>
- 5222 European Union, 1996. Council of the European Union: Council Directive on laying
 5223 down the Basic Safety Standards for the protection of the health of workers
 5224 and the general public against the dangers arising from ionizing radiation.
 5225 Official. J. Eur. Community 39, No. L, 159.
- 5226 Falk, R., Philipson, K., Svartengren, M., *et al.*, 1997. Clearance of particles from
 5227 small ciliated airways. Exp. Lung Res. 23, 495-515.
- 5228 Falk, R., Philipson, K., Svartengren, M., 1999. Assessment of long-term bronchiolar
 5229 clearance of particles from measurements of lung retention and theoretical
 5230 estimates of regional deposition. Exp. Lung Res. 25, 495-516.
- 5231 Foster, P.P., 1991. Study of a plutonium oxide fuel inhalation case. Radiat. Prot.
 5232 Dosim. 38, 141-146.
- 5233 Franck, D., Borissov, N., de Carlan, L., *et al.*, 2003. Application of Monte Carlo
 5234 calculations to calibration of anthropomorphic phantoms used for activity
 5235 assessment of actinides in lungs. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 105, 403-408.
- 5236 Frost, H. M., (1986). Intermediary Organization of the Skeleton, Volumes I & II. CRC
 5237 Press, Boca Raton, FL, USA.

- 5238 Fry, F.A., 1976. Long term retention of americium-241 following accidental
5239 inhalation. *Health Phys.* 31, 13-20.
- 5240 Fry, F.A., Lipsztein, J.L., Birchall, A., 2003. The ICRP working party on bioassay
5241 interpretation. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 105, 297–302.
- 5242 Gómez-Ros, J.M., Moraleda, M., López, M.A., Navarro, T. and Navarro, J.F. Monte
5243 Carlo based voxel phantoms for *in vivo* internal dosimetry, *Radiat. Prot.*
5244 *Dosim.* 125, 161-165.
- 5245 Gössner, W., 2003. Target cells in internal dosimetry. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 40, 245-
5246 257.
- 5247 Gregoratto, D., Bailey M.R., Marsh J.W., 2010. Modelling particle retention in the
5248 alveolar–interstitial region of the lungs. *J. Radiol. Prot.* 30, 491-512.
- 5249 Griffith, R.V., Anderson, S.L., Dean, P.N., *et al.*, 1986. Tissue-equivalent torso
5250 phantom for calibration of transuranic nuclide counting facilities. Lawrence
5251 Livermore National Laboratory, Preprint UCRL-93776, Livermore, CA, USA.
5252 <http://www.osti.gov/bridge/servlets/purl/5796207-idwX6y/5796207.pdf>
- 5253 Griffith, W.C., Cuddihy, R.G., Hoover, M.D., Stalnaker, N.D., 1980. Simulation of
5254 the retention and dosimetry of ²³²U and its daughters after inhalation of ThO₂
5255 and UO₂ particles. In: *Pulmonary Toxicology of Respirable Particles*,
5256 *Proceedings of the 19th Annual Hanford Life Sciences Symposium*, Richland,
5257 Washington, October 1979, National Technical Information Service,
5258 Springfield, VA, USA, pp 193-208.
- 5259 Guilmette, R.A., Hickman, A.W., Griffith, W.C., 1992. The effect of isotope on the
5260 dosimetry of inhaled plutonium oxide. In: *Proceedings of the 8th International*
5261 *Congress of the International Radiation Protection Association, IRPA*,
5262 Montreal, 1992, pp. 900–903.
5263 http://www.irpa.net/irpa8/cdrom/VOL.1/M1_221A.PDF
- 5264 Guilmette, R.A., Bertelli, L., Miller, G., Little, T.T., 2007. Technical basis for using
5265 nose swab bioassay data for early internal dose assessment. *Radiat. Prot.*
5266 *Dosim.* 127(1-4), 356-360.
- 5267 Gunnarsson, M. Stenström, K., Leide-Svegborn, S., *et al.*, 2003. Biokinetics and
5268 radiation dosimetry for patients undergoing a glycerol tri-[14C]oleate fat
5269 malabsorption test. *Appl. Radiat. Isot.* 58, 517-526.
- 5270 Gupton, E.D., Brown, P.E., 1972. Chest clearance of inhaled cobalt-60 oxide. *Health*
5271 *Phys.* 23, 767-769.
- 5272 Harrison, J.D., Leggett, R.W., Nosske, D., *et al.*, 2001. Reliability of the ICRP’s dose
5273 coefficients for members of the public II. Uncertainties in the absorption of
5274 ingested radionuclides and the effect on dose estimates. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.*
5275 95(4), 295-308.
- 5276 Hough, M., Johnson, P.B., Rajon, D., Jokisch, D., Lee, C., Bolch, W.E., 2011. An
5277 image-based skeletal dosimetry model for the ICRP reference adult male –
5278 internal electron sources. *Phys Med Biol* 56, 2309-2346.
- 5279 Hunt, J.G., Dantas, B.M., Lourenco, M.C., Azeredo, A.M.G., 2003. Voxel phantoms
5280 and Monte Carlo methods applied to *in vivo* measurements for simultaneous
5281 ²⁴¹Am contamination in four body regions. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 105, 549-552.

- 5282 IAEA, 1996a. Basic Safety Standards for Direct Methods for Measuring
5283 Radionuclides in the Human Body. Safety Series 114. International Atomic
5284 Energy Agency, Vienna, Austria.
- 5285 IAEA, 1999a. Occupational radiation protection. Safety Guide RS-G-1.1.
5286 International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, Austria.
- 5287 IAEA, 1999b. Occupational exposure due to intakes of radionuclides. Safety Guide
5288 RS-G-1.2. International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, Austria.
- 5289 IAEA, 2000. Basic Safety Standards for Indirect Methods for Assessing Intakes of
5290 Radionuclides Causing Occupational Exposure. Safety Series 18. International
5291 Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna.
- 5292 IAEA, 2004a. Basic Safety Standards for Methods for Assessing Occupational
5293 Radiation Doses Due to Intakes of Radionuclides. Safety Series 37.
5294 International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, Austria.
- 5295 IAEA, 2004b. Assessment and treatment of external and internal radionuclide
5296 contamination. TECDOC-869. International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna,
5297 Austria.
- 5298 IAEA, 2007. Intercomparison Exercise on Internal Dose Assessment, Final report of a
5299 Joint IAEA-IDEAS Project. TECDOC-1568. International Atomic Energy
5300 Agency, Vienna, Austria.
- 5301 ICRP, 1973. Alkaline earth metabolism in adult man. ICRP Publication 20. Pergamon
5302 Press, Oxford, UK.
- 5303 ICRP, 1975. Report on the Task Group on Reference Man. ICRP Publication 23.
5304 Pergamon Press, Oxford, UK.
- 5305 ICRP, 1977. Recommendations of the International Commission on Radiological
5306 Protection. ICRP Publication 26. Ann. ICRP 1 (3).
- 5307 ICRP, 1979. Limits for intake of radionuclides by workers. ICRP Publication 30, Part
5308 1. Ann. ICRP 2(3/4).
- 5309 ICRP, 1980. Limits for intakes of radionuclides by workers. ICRP Publication 30,
5310 Part 2. Ann. ICRP 4(3/4).
- 5311 ICRP, 1981. Limits for intakes of radionuclides by workers. ICRP Publication 30,
5312 Part 3. Ann. ICRP 6 (2/3).
- 5313 ICRP, 1983. Radionuclide transformations: energy and intensity of emissions. ICRP
5314 Publication 38. Ann. ICRP 11-13.
- 5315 ICRP, 1986. The metabolism of plutonium and related elements. ICRP Publication
5316 48, Ann. ICRP 16 (2/3).
- 5317 ICRP, 1988a. Individual monitoring for intakes of radionuclides by workers: design
5318 and interpretation. ICRP Publication 54, Ann. ICRP 19 (1-3).
- 5319 ICRP, 1988b. Limits for intakes of radionuclides by workers: An Addendum. ICRP
5320 Publication 30, Part 4. Ann. ICRP 19 (4).
- 5321 ICRP, 1989. Age-dependent doses to members of the public from intake of
5322 radionuclides. ICRP Publication 56, Part 1. Ann. ICRP 20 (2).
- 5323 ICRP, 1991. 1990 Recommendations of the ICRP. ICRP Publication 60. Ann. ICRP
5324 21 (1-3).
- 5325 ICRP, 1993a. Protection against radon-222 at home and work. ICRP Publication 65.
5326 Ann. ICRP 23 (2).

- 5327 ICRP, 1993b. Age-dependent doses to members of the public from intake of
 5328 radionuclides: Part 2, Ingestion dose coefficients. ICRP Publication 67. Ann.
 5329 ICRP 23 (3/4).
- 5330 ICRP, 1994a. Human respiratory tract model for radiological protection. ICRP
 5331 Publication 66. Ann. ICRP 24 (1-3).
- 5332 ICRP, 1994b. Dose coefficients for intake of radionuclides by workers. ICRP
 5333 Publication 68. Ann. ICRP 24 (4).
- 5334 ICRP, 1995a. Age-dependent doses to members of the public from intake of
 5335 radionuclides: Part 3, Ingestion dose coefficients. ICRP Publication 69. Ann.
 5336 ICRP 25 (1).
- 5337 ICRP, 1995b. Basic anatomical and physiological data for use in radiological
 5338 protection: The skeleton. ICRP Publication 70. Ann ICRP 25 (2).
- 5339 ICRP, 1995c. Age-dependent doses to members of the public from intake of
 5340 radionuclides: Part 4, Inhalation dose coefficients. ICRP Publication 71. Ann.
 5341 ICRP 25 (3-4).
- 5342 ICRP, 1996. Age-dependent doses to members of the public from intake of
 5343 radionuclides: Part 5 Compilation of ingestion and inhalation dose
 5344 coefficients. ICRP Publication 72. Ann. ICRP 26 (1).
- 5345 ICRP, 1997. Individual monitoring for internal exposure of workers – Replacement of
 5346 ICRP Publication 54. ICRP Publication 78. Ann. ICRP 27 (3/4).
- 5347 ICRP, 2001. Dose to the embryo and fetus from intakes of radionuclides by the
 5348 mother. ICRP Publication 88. Ann. ICRP 31 (1-3).
- 5349 ICRP, 2002a. Basic anatomical and physiological data for use in radiological
 5350 protection: reference values. ICRP Publication 89. Ann. ICRP 32 (3-4).
- 5351 ICRP, 2002b. Guide for the practical applications of the ICRP Human Respiratory
 5352 Tract Model. Supporting Guidance 3. Ann. ICRP 32 (1-2).
- 5353 ICRP, 2004. Doses to the infant from radionuclides ingested in mothers’ milk. ICRP
 5354 Publication 95, Ann. ICRP 34 (3-4).
- 5355 ICRP, 2005. Basis for dosimetric quantities used in radiological protection.
 5356 Committee 2 Consultation Draft. www.icrp.org (May 2004).
- 5357 ICRP, 2006. Human alimentary tract model for radiological protection. ICRP
 5358 Publication 100. Ann. ICRP 36 (1-2).
- 5359 ICRP, 2007. The 2007 Recommendations of the International Commission on
 5360 Radiological Protection. ICRP Publication 103. Ann. ICRP 37 (2-4).
- 5361 ICRP, 2008. Nuclear decay data for dosimetric calculations. ICRP Publication 107.
 5362 Ann. ICRP 38(3).
- 5363 ICRP, 2009. Adult reference computational phantoms. ICRP Publication 110. Ann.
 5364 ICRP 39 (2).
- 5365 ICRP, 2010. Conversion coefficients for radiological protection quantities for external
 5366 radiation exposures. ICRP Publication 116. Ann. ICRP 40(1).
- 5367 ICRP Publication xxx (ICRP 2012). (The forthcoming “SAF” Publication – reference
 5368 to be added).
- 5369 ICRU, 2002a. Retrospective assessment of exposure to ionising radiation. ICRU
 5370 Report 67. Journal of the ICRU 2 (2).
- 5371 ICRU, 2002b. Absorbed-doses specification in nuclear medicine. ICRU Report 68.
 5372 Journal of the ICRU 2 (1).

- 5373 ICRU, 2003. Direct determination of the body content of radionuclides. ICRU Report
5374 69. Journal of the ICRU 3 (1).
- 5375 ISO, 2006. Radiation protection — Monitoring of workers occupationally exposed to
5376 a risk of internal contamination with radioactive material. ISO 205553:2006.
5377 International Organization for Standardization, Geneva, Switzerland.
- 5378 ISO, 2011. Radiation protection — Dose assessment for the monitoring of workers
5379 for internal radiation exposure. ISO 27048:2011. International Organization
5380 for Standardization, Geneva, Switzerland.
- 5381 Johnson, J. R., Peterman, B. F., 1984. A model to describe thoron exhalation
5382 following an inhalation exposure to thoria powders. In: Lung Modelling for
5383 Inhalation of Radioactive Materials, EUR Report 9384, Commission of the
5384 European Communities, Luxembourg (1984) pp. 193-196.
- 5385 Johnson, P.B., Bahadori, A.A., Eckerman, K.F., Lee, C., Bolch, W.E., 2011.
5386 Response functions for computing absorbed dose to skeletal tissues from
5387 photon irradiation – an update. Phys Med Biol 56, 2347-2366.
- 5388 Jokisch, D.W., Rajon, D.A., Patton, P.W., Bolch, W.E., 2011a. Methods for inclusion
5389 of shallow marrow and adipose tissue in pathlength-based skeletal dosimetry.
5390 Phys Med Biol 56, 2699–2713.
- 5391 Jokisch, D.W., Rajon, D.A., Bolch, W.E., 2011b. An image-based skeletal dosimetry
5392 model for the ICRP reference adult male – Specific absorbed fractions for
5393 neutron-generated recoil protons. Phys Med Biol 56, 6857-6872.
- 5394 Kawrakow, I., Mainegra-Hing, E., Rogers, D.W.O., et al., 2009. The EGSnrc code
5395 system: Monte Carlo simulation of electron and photon transport. PIRS Report
5396 701, National Research Council of Canada (NRCC), Ottawa.
- 5397 Kramer, G.H., Hauck, B.M., 1999. The effect of lung deposition patterns on the
5398 activity estimate obtained from a large area germanium detector lung counter.
5399 Health Phys. 77, 24-32.
- 5400 Kramer, G.H., Lopez, M.A., Webb, J., 2000. A joint HML-CIEMAT-CEMRC
5401 project: testing a function to the counting efficiency of a lung counting
5402 germanium detector array to muscle-equivalent chest wall thickness and
5403 photon energy using a realistic torso phantom over an extended energy range.
5404 Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 92, 324-327.
- 5405 Kramer, G.H., Hauck B.M., Chamberlain M.J., 2002. Biological half-life of iodine in
5406 adults with intact thyroid function and in athyreotic persons. Rad. Prot.
5407 Dosim. 102(2) 129-135.
- 5408 Kuempel, E.D., O’Flaherty E.J., Stayner L.T., 2001. A biomathematical model of
5409 particle clearance and retention in the lungs of coal miners. Regul. Toxicol.
5410 Pharmacol. 34, 69-87.
- 5411 Kvasnicka, J. 1987. Assessing dose equivalent from intensive short term U product
5412 inhalation. Health Phys. 53, 673-678.
- 5413 La Bone, T.R., 1994. Evaluation of intakes of transuranics influenced by chelation
5414 therapy. In: Internal Radiation Dosimetry. O.G. Raabe, editor. (Madison,
5415 Wisconsin: Medical Physics Publishing).
- 5416 http://www.osti.gov/energycitations/product.biblio.jsp?osti_id=10123790

- 5417 LaMont, S.P., Schick, C.R., Cable-Dunlap, P., 2005. Plutonium determination in
5418 bioassay sample using radiochemical thermal ionization mass spectrometry. J.
5419 Radioanal. Nucl. Chem. 263, 477-481.
- 5420 Leggett, R.W., Bouville, A., Eckerman, K.F., 1998. Reliability of the ICRP's systemic
5421 biokinetic models. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 79, 335-342.
- 5422 Leggett, R.W., 2001. Reliability of ICRP's dose coefficients for members of the
5423 public I. Sources of uncertainty in the biokinetic models. Radiat. Prot. Dosim.
5424 95(3).
- 5425 Leggett, R.W., 2003. Reliability of ICRP's dose coefficients for members of the
5426 public III. Plutonium as a case study of uncertainties in the systemic
5427 biokinetics of radionuclides. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 106 (2), 103-120.
- 5428 Leggett, R.W., 2005.
- 5429 Leggett, R. W.; Harrison, J. D.; Phipps, A., 2007. Reliability of the ICRP's dose
5430 coefficients for members of the public: IV. Basis of the human alimentary
5431 tract model and uncertainties in model predictions. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 123,
5432 156-170.
- 5433 Leggett, R.W., Eckerman, K.F., Meck, R.A., 2008. Reliability of Current Biokinetic
5434 and Dosimetric Models for Radionuclides: A Pilot Study. Oak Ridge National
5435 Laboratory: Oak Ridge, TN. ORNL/TM-2008/131.
- 5436 Leide-Svegborn, S., Stenström, K., Olofsson, M., 1999. Biokinetics and radiation
5437 doses for ¹⁴C-urea in adults and children undergoing the Helicobacter pylori
5438 breath test. Eur. J. Nucl. Med. 26, 573-580.
- 5439 Likhtarev, I., Minenko, V., Khrouch, V., *et al.*, 2003. Uncertainties in thyroid dose
5440 reconstruction after Chernobyl. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 105 (1-4), 601-608.
- 5441 Lipsztein, J.L., Dias da Cunha, K.M., Azeredo, A.M.G., Julião, L., Santos, M., Melo
5442 D.R., Simões Filho, F.F.L., 2001. Exposure of workers in mineral processing
5443 industries in Brazil. J. Environ. Radioactivity 54(1), 189-99.
- 5444 Lipsztein, J. L., Melo, D. R., Sousa, W., Dias da Cunha, K. M., Azeredo, A. M. G.,
5445 Julião, L., Santos, M., 2003. NORM workers: a challenge for internal
5446 dosimetry programmes. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 105(1-4), 317-20
- 5447 Little, T.T., Miller, G., Guilmette, R., Bertelli, L., *et al.*, 2007. Uranium dose
5448 assessment: a Bayesian approach to the problem of dietary background.
5449 Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 127(1-4), 333-338.
- 5450 Lopez, M.A., Broggio, D., Capello, K., *et al.*, 2011a. EURADOS intercomparison on
5451 measurements and Monte Carlo modelling for the assessment of americium in
5452 a USTUR leg phantom. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 144, 295-299.
- 5453 Lopez, M.A., Balásházy, I., Bérard, P., 2011b. EURADOS coordinated action on
5454 research, quality assurance and training of internal dose assessments. Radiat.
5455 Prot. Dosim. 144, 349-352.
- 5456 Mann, J.R., Kirchner, R.A., 1967. Evaluation of lung burden following acute
5457 inhalation exposure to highly insoluble PuO₂. Health Phys. 13, 877-882.
- 5458 Marsh, J.W., Castellani, C.M., Hurtgen, C., 2008. Internal Dose Assessments:
5459 Uncertainty studies and update of IDEAS Guidelines and Databases within
5460 CONRAD Project. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 131, 34-39.
- 5461 Marshall, M., Stevens, D.C., 1980. The purposes, methods and accuracy of sampling
5462 for airborne particulate radioactive materials. Health Phys. 39, 409-423.

5463 Miller, G., Martz, H.F., Little, T., Guilmette, R., 2002. Using exact Poisson likelihood
 5464 functions in Bayesian interpretation of counting measurements. *Health Phys.*
 5465 83(4), 512-518.

5466 Miller, G., Martz, H.F., Little, T.T., Guilmette, R., 2002. Bayesian internal dosimetry
 5467 calculations using Markov chain Monte Carlo. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 98, 191-
 5468 198.

5469 Moeller, D.W., Sun, L.S., 2006. Comparison of natural background dose rates for
 5470 residents of the Amargosa Valley, NV, to those in Leadville, CO, and the
 5471 states of Colorado and Nevada. *Health Phys.* 91(4), 338-53.

5472 Moody, J.C., Stradling, G.N., Wilson, I., *et al.*, 1993. Biokinetics of plutonium in the
 5473 rat after the pulmonary deposition of three nitrate bearing materials:
 5474 implications for human exposure. NRPB-M427. Chilton, Didcot, UK.

5475 NCRP, 1998. Evaluating the Reliability of Biokinetic and Dosimetric Models and
 5476 parameters Used to Assess Individual Doses for Risk Assessment Purposes.
 5477 NCRP Commentary 15. National Council on Radiation Protection and
 5478 Measurements, Bethesda MD.

5479 NCRP, 2007. Development of a Biokinetic Model for Radionuclide-Contaminated
 5480 Wounds and Procedures for their Assessment, Dosimetry and Treatment.
 5481 Report No. 156. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements,
 5482 Bethesda MD.

5483 NCRP, 2010. Uncertainties in Internal Radiation Dose Assessment. Report No. 164.
 5484 National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Bethesda MD.

5485 Newton, D., 1977. Clearance of radioactive tantalum from the human lung after
 5486 accidental inhalation. *Am. J. Roentgenol. Radium Ther. Nucl. Med.* 129, 327-
 5487 328.

5488 Newton, D., Rundo, J., 1971. The long term retention of inhaled cobalt-60. *Health*
 5489 *Phys.* 21, 377-384.

5490 Newton, D., Taylor, B.T., Eakins, J.D., 1983. Differential clearance of plutonium and
 5491 americium oxides from the human lung. *Health Phys.*, 44 (Suppl. 1), 431 -
 5492 439.

5493 Niita, K., Matsuda, N., Iwamoto, Y., *et al.*, 2010. PHITS - Particle and Heavy Ion
 5494 Transport code System, Version 2.23. Japan Atomic Energy Agency, Tokai-
 5495 mura, Japan.

5496 Noßke, D., Karcher, K., 2003. Is radiation protection for the unborn child guaranteed
 5497 by radiation protection for female workers? *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 105, 269-
 5498 272.

5499 ORAUT, 2007. Estimating doses for plutonium strongly retained in the Lung.
 5500 ORAUT-OTIB-0049. Oak Ridge Associated Universities Team.

5501 Parfitt, A.M., Kleerekoper, M., 1980. The divalent ion homeostatic system:
 5502 Physiology and metabolism of calcium, phosphorus, magnesium and bone. In:
 5503 *Clinical Disorders of Fluid and Electrolyte Metabolism*, 3rd ed. (Eds.
 5504 Maxwell, M. and Kleeman, C.R.) McGraw Hill, New York, USA, pp. 269-
 5505 398.

5506 Pawel, D.J., Leggett, R.W., Eckerman, K. F., Nelson, C.B., 2007. Uncertainties in
 5507 Cancer Risk Coefficients for Environmental Exposure to Radionuclides. An
 5508 Uncertainty Analysis for Risk Coefficients Reported in Federal Guidance

- 5509 Report No. 13. ORNL/TM-2006/583. Oak Ridge National Laboratory. Oak
5510 Ridge.
- 5511 Pelowitz, D.B., 2008. MCNPX User's Manual, Version 2.6.0. LA-CP-07-1473, Los
5512 Alamos National Laboratory Los Alamos, NM, USA.
- 5513 Philipson K., Falk R., Gustafsson J., Camner P., 1996. Long-term lung clearance of
5514 ¹⁹⁵Au-labelled teflon particles in humans. *Env. Lung Res.* 22, 65–83.
- 5515 Philipson, K., Falk, R., Svartengren, M., 2000. Does lung retention of inhaled
5516 particles depend on their geometric diameter? *Exp. Lung Res.* 26, 437-455.
- 5517 Phipps, A.W., Smith, T.J., Fell, T.P., Harrison, J.D., 2001. Doses to the embryo/fetus
5518 and neonate from intakes of radionuclides by the mother. Contract Research
5519 Report to the Health and Safety Executive. CRR 397. HSE Information
5520 Services, Caerphilly.
- 5521 Priest, N.D., Haines, J.W., Humphreys, J.A.M., Metivier, H., Kathren, R.L., 1992.
5522 The bone volume effect on the dosimetry of plutonium-239 and americium-
5523 241 in the skeleton of man and baboon. *J. Radioanal. Nucl. Chem.* 156(1), 33-
5524 53.
- 5525 Price, A., 1989. Review of methods for the assessment of intake of uranium by
5526 workers at BNFL Springfields. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.*, 26, 35-42.
- 5527 Puncher, M., Marsh, J.W., Birchall, A. 2006. Obtaining an unbiased estimate of
5528 intake in routine monitoring when the time of intake is unknown. *Radiat. Prot.*
5529 *Dosim.* 118(3), 280-289.
- 5530 Puncher, M., Birchall, A., 2008. A Monte Carlo method for calculating Bayesian
5531 uncertainties in internal dosimetry. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 132, 1-12
- 5532 Raghavendran, K.V., Satbhai, P.D., Abhyankar, B., *et al.*, 1978. Long term retention
5533 studies of ¹³¹I, ¹³⁷Cs and ⁶⁰Co in Indian workers. *Health Phys.* 34, 185–188.
- 5534 Ramsden, D., 1976. Assessment of Plutonium in Lung for Both Chronic and Acute
5535 Exposure Conditions. In: *Diagnosis and Treatment of Incorporated*
5536 *Radionuclides.* International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, Austria, pp.
5537 139-161.
- 5538 Ramsden, D. 1984. A Modified Lung Model to Match Observed Lung and Urinary
5539 Data Following the Inhalation of Plutonium Oxide the Problems of Long
5540 Term Retention in the Pulmonary Lymph Nodes. In: *Lung Modelling for*
5541 *Inhalation of Radioactive Materials.* EUR 9384. (Eds. Smith, H. and Gerber,
5542 G.) CEC, Brussels, Belgium, pp. 281–286.
- 5543 Ramsden, D., Bains, M.E.D., Frazer, D.C., 1978. A case study of multiple low level
5544 exposure to plutonium oxide. *Health Phys.* 34, 649–659.
- 5545 Ronen, M., 1969. A Case of Insoluble Natural Uranium Exposure (a Two Year
5546 Follow Up Study). In: *Handling of Radiation Accidents.* Proceedings of a
5547 symposium on the handling of radiation accidents organized with IAEA in
5548 collaboration with the WHO and held in Vienna, Austria, May 19 23, 1969,
5549 pp. 451 457.
- 5550 Rundo, J., 1965. A case of accidental inhalation of irradiated uranium. *Br. J. Radiol.*,
5551 38, 39-50.
- 5552 Sánchez, G., 2007. Fitting bioassay data and performing uncertainty analysis with
5553 BLOKMOD. *Health Phys.* 92(1), 64-72.

- 5554 Sathyabama, N., Eappen, K.P., Mayya, Y.S., 2005. Calibration of an electrostatic
5555 chamber for thoron measurements in exhaled breath. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 118,
5556 61-69.
- 5557 Saxby, W.N., Taylor, N.A., Garland, J., *et al.*, 1964. A Case of Inhalation of Enriched
5558 Uranium Dust. In: *Assessment of Radioactivity in Man, Volume II*,
5559 International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, Austria, pp. 535-547.
- 5560 Scott, L.M., West, C.M., 1967. An evaluation of U₃O₈ exposure with an estimate of
5561 systemic body burden. *Health Phys.* 13, 21-26.
- 5562 Schultz, N.B., 1966. Inhalation Cases of Enriched Insoluble Uranium Oxides. In:
5563 *Proceedings of First International Congress of Radiation Protection IRPA*,
5564 Rome, Italy, September 5 10, 1966, Pergamon Press, Oxford, United
5565 Kingdom, pp. 1205 1213.
- 5566 Shah, A.P., Bolch, W.E., Rajon, D.A., Patton, P.W., Jokisch, D.W., 2005. A paired-
5567 image radiation transport (PIRT) model for skeletal dosimetry. *J Nucl Med* 46
5568 (2) 344-353.
- 5569 Skrable, K., Chabot, G., French, C.M., 1994. Estimation of intakes from repetitive
5570 bioassay measurements, in *Internal Radiation Dosimetry (RAABE, O.G., Ed.)*.
5571 Medical Physics Publishing, Madison, WI, USA.
- 5572 Skrable, K., French, C.M., Chabot, G., *et al.*, 2002. Variance models for estimating
5573 intakes from repetitive bioassay measurements, in *Practical Applications of*
5574 *Internal Dosimetry (BOLCH, W.E., Ed.)*. Medical Phys. Publishing, Madison,
5575 WI, USA.
- 5576 Smith, J.R.H., Etherington G., Shutt A.L., Youngman, M.J., 2002. A study of aerosol
5577 deposition and clearance from the human nasal passage, *Ann. Occup. Hyg.*
5578 46(Suppl. 1) 309–313.
- 5579 Smith, J.R.H., Bailey, M.R., Etherington, G., *et al.*, 2007. Further study of the effect
5580 of particle size on slow particle clearance from the bronchial tree. *Radiat. Prot.*
5581 *Dosim.* 127, 35-39.
- 5582 Smith, J.R.H, Bailey, M.R., Etherington, G., *et al.*, 2008. Effect of particle size on
5583 slow particle clearance from the bronchial tree, (*Exp. Lung Res.* 34, 287-312.
- 5584 Smith, J.R.H., Bailey, M.R., Etherington, G., *et al.*, 2011. An experimental study of
5585 clearance of inhaled particles from the human nose. *Exp. Lung Res.* 37(2),
5586 109–129.
- 5587 Snyder, S.F., Traub, R.J., 2010. The Livermore phantom history and supplementation.
5588 *Health Phys.* 98, 459-465.
- 5589 Stradling, N., Hodgson, A., Phipps, A.W., *et al.*, 2005. Can low doses from inhaled
5590 thorium be confirmed by personal monitoring ?. *Proc. 9th Int. Conf. on Health*
5591 *Effects of Incorporated Radionuclides (HEIR)*. Nov 29 - Dec 1, 2004, GSF-
5592 Report 06/05, GSF Neuherberg, pp261-268.
- 5593 Sun, L.C., Clinton, J.H., McDonald, J., Moorthy, A.R., Kaplan, E., Meinhold, C.B.,
5594 1993. Urine collection protocol in the Republic of the Marshall Islands.
5595 *Radiat. Prot. Management*, 10 64-72.
- 5596 Svartengren, M., Sommerer, K., Scheuch, G., 2001. Comparison of clearance of
5597 particles inhaled with bolus and extremely slow inhalation techniques. *Exp.*
5598 *Lung Res.* 27, 367-386.

- 5599 Takahashi, S., Patrick, G., 1987. Long-term retention of ^{133}Ba in the rat trachea
 5600 following local administration as barium sulfate particles. *Radiat. Res.* 110,
 5601 321–328.
- 5602 Takahashi, S., Kubota Y., Sato H., Matsuoka, O., 1993. Retention of ^{133}Ba in the
 5603 trachea of rabbits, dogs and monkeys following local administration of
 5604 $^{133}\text{BaSO}_4$ particles. *Inhal. Tox.* 5, 265–273.
- 5605 Tyler, G.R., Lister, B.A.J., 1973. The Biological Half Life of ^{144}Ce in the Human
 5606 Chest as Determined From *in vivo* Measurements Following an Accidental
 5607 Inhalation. In: Proceedings of the IRPA 2nd European Congress on Radiation
 5608 Protection, pp. 249–253.
- 5609 Webb, J.L., Gadd, M., Bronsen, F., Tench, O., 2000. An evaluation of recent lung
 5610 counting technology. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 89, 325-332.
- 5611 Wernli, C., Eikenberg, J., 2007. Twenty-year follow-up of a Pu/Am inhalation case.
 5612 *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 125, 506-512.
- 5613 West, C.M., Scott, L.M., 1966. A comparison of uranium cases showing long chest
 5614 burden retentions. *Health Phys.* 12, 1545–1555.
- 5615 West, C.M., Scott, L.M., 1969. Uranium cases showing long chest burden retention
 5616 an updating. *Health Phys.* 17, 781– 791.
- 5617 West, C.M., Scott, L.M., Schultz, N.B., 1979. Sixteen years of uranium personnel
 5618 monitoring experience – in retrospect. *Health Phys.* 36, 665–669.
- 5619 Whicker, J.L., 2004. Relationship of air sampling measurements to internal dose: a
 5620 review. In: Proceedings of 37th Midyear Health Physics Society Meeting on
 5621 Air Monitoring and Internal Dosimetry, Augusta, GA., USA. 8-11 February
 5622 2004, 73-77. <http://hps.org/meetings/midyear/abstract508.html>.
- 5623 Youngman, M.J., Smith, J.R.H., Kovari, M., 1994. The determination of thorium lung
 5624 burden by measurements of thoron in exhaled air. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 53, 99-
 5625 102.
- 5626 Zankl, M., Fill, U., Petoussi-Henss, N., Regulla, D. 2002. Organ dose conversion
 5627 coefficients for external photon irradiation of male and female voxel models.
 5628 *Phys. Med. Biol.* 47, 2367-85.
- 5629 Zankl, M., Petoussi-Henss, N., Fill, U., Regulla, D., 2003. The application of voxel
 5630 phantoms to the internal dosimetry of radionuclides. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 105,
 5631 539-48.
- 5632 Zankl, M., Eckerman, K., Bolch, W.E., 2007. Voxel-based models representing the
 5633 male and female ICRP reference adult – the skeleton *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.*
 5634 127, 174-86.